

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

+ + + + +

UNITED STATES COPYRIGHT OFFICE

+ + + + +

HEARING ON EXEMPTION TO PROHIBITION ON  
CIRCUMVENTION OF COPYRIGHT PROTECTION SYSTEMS  
FOR ACCESS CONTROL TECHNOLOGIES

+ + + + +

DOCKET NO. RM 9907

+ + + + +

FRIDAY,  
MAY 19, 2000

+ + + + +

The hearing in the above-entitled matter was held in Room 290, Stanford Law School, Crown Quadrangle, Stanford, California, at 9:45 a.m.

BEFORE:

MARYBETH PETERS, Register of Copyrights

DAVID CARSON, ESQ., General Counsel

RACHEL GOSLINS, ESQ., Attorney Advisor

CHARLOTTE DOUGLASS, ESQ., Principal Legal Advisor

ROBERT KASUNIC, ESQ., Senior Attorney Advisor

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

I-N-D-E-X

1		
2		
3	<u>Panel I:</u>	
4		
5	Paul Hughes	4
6	Business Software Alliance, Adobe Systems	
7		
8	Emery Simon	17
9	BSA	
10		
11	Fred Weingarten	30
12	American Library Association	
13		
14		
15	<u>Panel II:</u>	
16		
17	Steve Metalitz	116
18		
19		
20	<u>Panel III:</u>	
21		
22	Robin Gross	171
23	Electronic Frontier Foundation	
24		
25	Dean Marks	186
26	Motion Picture Association of America	
27		
28	Riley Russell	205
29	Sony Computer Entertainment America	
30		
31	Jonathan Hangartner	221
32	Bleem, Inc.	
33		
34	Morton Goldberg	231
35	Cowan, Liebowitz & Latman, P.C.	
36		

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 P-R-O-C-E-E-D-I-N-G-S

2 (9:45 a.m.)

3 MS. PETERS: Good morning. We're going  
4 to start our second day of hearings here at Stanford  
5 University Law School. Yesterday I made an opening  
6 statement. I will not repeat it. It is outside for  
7 those who are not aware of it.

8 This morning we have several witnesses  
9 from the Business Software Alliance. We have Paul  
10 Hughes of Adobe Systems, Incorporated, and then we  
11 have Emery Simon representing DSA.

12 We were supposed to have Steve Metalitz  
13 representing a wide range of copyright owners. He  
14 is stuck in Chicago because of bad weather. He may  
15 be getting on a plane and may be able to join us  
16 this afternoon, but we're not sure about that. And  
17 that may cause adjustment of the starting time this  
18 afternoon. We'll know by the end of this morning  
19 what we'll be doing. Also with us is Frederick  
20 Weingarten, representing the American Library  
21 Association.

22 So we will start with Business Software  
23 Alliance, and between the two of you, you decide  
24 who's going first. Paul? Okay.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. HUGHES: Good morning. My name is  
2 Paul Hughes, and I'm Public Policy Advisor at Adobe  
3 Systems. On behalf of Adobe, I would like to  
4 express my appreciation for the opportunity to  
5 appear before you today at this important rulemaking  
6 hearing required by the Digital Millennium Copyright  
7 Act.

8                   Before turning to certain specific  
9 issues raised by this rulemaking proceeding, I would  
10 like to talk about the critical importance of  
11 Section 1201 of the DMCA and Section 1201(a)(1)(A),  
12 specifically, to software companies like Adobe which  
13 confront a serious and pervasive piracy problem.  
14 The anticircumvention rules enacted by the Congress  
15 in the DMCA are the results of a deliberate and  
16 considered response by the Congress to two facts:  
17 dissemination of works in digital form poses very  
18 real piracy threats to copyright holders; and the  
19 use of technological measures to thwart such piracy  
20 is needed to ensure the availability of legitimate  
21 copyrighted works.

22                   Let me tell you a little bit about  
23 Adobe. Our chairmen, John Warnock and Chuck  
24 Geschke, founded the company in 1982 with a very  
25 modest business plan. They envisioned employing

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 around 40 people in what was effectively a copy  
2 shop, doing typesetting based on their Adobe  
3 PostScript printer language.

4           Unfortunately, they failed in that  
5 business plan but instead launched Adobe PostScript  
6 and PageMaker and went on to launch the desktop  
7 publishing revolution. Today Adobe offers software  
8 for web, print and multimedia publishing. It's  
9 graphic design, imaging, dynamic media and other  
10 software tools enable customers to create and  
11 deliver visually-rich content across all media.

12           We are now the third largest personal  
13 computer software company in the United States, with  
14 annual revenues of a hair over a billion dollars.  
15 And it's obviously no exaggeration to say we  
16 wouldn't exist -- in our current form, at least --  
17 were it not for the very strong intellectual  
18 property laws in the United States that have  
19 protected the creative work of all of us who work at  
20 Adobe.

21           Software has the dubious distinction of  
22 being both the copyrighted work distributed  
23 exclusively in digital form to which technological  
24 protection measures were applied and also being the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 first type of copyrighted work to be exposed to  
2 massive digital piracy.

3           The markets for software are changing  
4 rapidly. With the establishment of the Internet as  
5 a major avenue for distributing software products,  
6 we see both a major business opportunity and a major  
7 potential threat.

8           First, I'd like to talk about the  
9 opportunity presented by the Internet. It provides  
10 tremendous prospects for all types of products and  
11 services to be provided and distributed more  
12 quickly, more efficiently and more cost-effectively  
13 worldwide. Forrester Research estimates that annual  
14 e-commerce sales just among businesses totaled \$100  
15 billion last year and will reach \$1.33 trillion  
16 worldwide by 2003.

17           Technology products and, obviously,  
18 software in particular are leading the way in online  
19 distribution and are obvious candidates for such  
20 distribution. IDC, one of the major research firms  
21 in the information technology sector, predicts that  
22 the worldwide market for electronic commerce in  
23 software reached \$3.5 billion last year and will  
24 grow to \$32.9 billion by 2003, as more businesses  
25 and consumers become familiar with shopping on the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Net. According to some estimates, as much as 70  
2 percent of software will be sold online by 2005. So  
3 that's the good news.

4 Now, the threat. Unfortunately, like  
5 other criminals, Internet pirates are ingenious and  
6 adaptive, constantly finding new ways to adapt for  
7 illicit purposes the very technology that has made  
8 e-commerce possible.

9 To give you a sobering example, if you  
10 search on the Internet today, you will find over 2  
11 million web pages offering links to or otherwise  
12 talking about "warez," the Internet slang word for  
13 illegal copies of software.

14 This rough indicator of the problem has  
15 increased substantially over the past three years,  
16 from 100,000 web page hits two years ago to 900,000  
17 last year, and to over 2 million today. Virtually  
18 every software product now available on the market  
19 can be located on one of these sites, including all  
20 Adobe products.

21 Indeed, the Business Software Alliance  
22 estimates that, of business software in use today  
23 worldwide, fully 37 percent of it is pirated. And  
24 that figure doesn't include consumer software,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 games, things like that, for which the piracy rate  
2 frankly, I believe, is probably far higher.

3           To protect ourselves against pirates,  
4 the software industry has used a variety of  
5 technological protection measures. Often, these  
6 measures require a person loading a computer program  
7 on their system to enter a passcode or serial number  
8 as part of the installation process. If the wrong  
9 code is entered the software cannot be installed or  
10 accessed.

11           More recently, the industry has used a  
12 variety of encryption technologies. For example, to  
13 access certain antivirus products purchased online  
14 and downloaded, the recipient needs a decryption key  
15 which is sent by separate e-mail.

16           As the marketplace for computer programs  
17 has developed, it has also become the practice of  
18 most developers of business software products to  
19 license their works to their customers. This has  
20 proved to be a most efficient means of making these  
21 works available to both vendors and consumers.

22           A business or other user will often  
23 receive a single copy of the work, and the license  
24 will authorize the use of that product by a  
25 specified number of persons. This practice, often

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 referred to as "site licensing," is now an industry  
2 standard. And to ensure that only authorized  
3 persons use the software, loading a specific copy of  
4 the work in a computer often requires the  
5 application of a serial number, password or access  
6 code to ensure that the person is legally entitled  
7 to access and use the software.

8           Of course, hackers have adapted. Today  
9 hacker sites offer serial numbers, access codes and  
10 software program "patches" that bypass or circumvent  
11 encryption or other technical protections that the  
12 copyright owner may have employed. Using a popular  
13 search engine again, and searching this time for the  
14 word "crackz" -- always with that great "z" -- we  
15 recently found over one million web pages which make  
16 available such patches, many of which are  
17 specifically designed to defeat technological  
18 protection measures.

19           To give just one example, an  
20 enterprising hacker has written a small utility  
21 program called "The Adobe Serial Number Generator,"  
22 that unfortunately does exactly what it's name  
23 suggests. It will generate usable -- but illicit --  
24 pirate serial numbers that enable access to our

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 products and updaters by those who do not have  
2 legitimate licensed copies of our programs.

3           The making, distribution, and use of  
4 this pirate serial number generator is analogous to  
5 selling burglar tools or unauthorized satellite tv  
6 descramblers. The latter two categories of devices  
7 are illegal under state and federal laws and  
8 Congress intended to do the same thing with  
9 copyright circumvention devices -- make them  
10 illegal.

11           From our industry's perspective,  
12 1201(a)(1)(A) is an indispensable legal tool needed  
13 to prevent piracy and distribution of these illegal  
14 access codes and patches designed to defeat  
15 technological protection measures.

16           We believe that it is self-evident that  
17 the Congress recognized the critical nature of this  
18 cause of action. That is why it is part of the law,  
19 and why this Administration pushed hard for the  
20 anticircumvision provisions of the WIPO Copyright  
21 Treaty that the DMCA implements. The fact that  
22 Congress saw fit to establish this rulemaking cannot  
23 be treated as an opportunity to overrule the will of  
24 the Congress. The consequences for Adobe, and for

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the software industry as a whole, would be  
2 disastrous.

3           The vast majority of the comments  
4 submitted suggest that the anticircumvention cause  
5 of action as a whole should be suspended. We,  
6 obviously, strongly disagree. In addition, such an  
7 action is not within the scope of this rulemaking,  
8 and I'll have more on that in just a moment.

9           A great many other submissions argue  
10 that non-infringing uses of works, such as those  
11 contemplated under the fair use provisions of the  
12 Copyright Act, somehow trump the copyright holders  
13 right to license and enjoy their property interest.

14           Again, that issue is not the subject of  
15 this rulemaking, but much has been made of the  
16 supposed danger, such as the development of pay-per-  
17 use business models which may develop if this cause  
18 of action goes into effect.

19           The argument that possible non-  
20 infringing uses of works deserve a higher level of  
21 consideration than the copyright owners' interests  
22 has been the subject of much attention recently,  
23 including recent litigation. We believe these  
24 arguments to be ill-founded.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   For example, in the recent UMG  
2 Recordings, Inc. v. MP3.Com, MP3.Com made this very  
3 argument, and the judge had no trouble disposing of  
4 the argument. He wrote:

5                   "Finally, regarding Defendant's  
6 purported reliance on other factors (analyzing the  
7 four fair-use factors set out in Section 107), this  
8 essentially reduces the claim that My.MP3.com  
9 provides a useful service to consumers... Copyright,  
10 however, is not designed to afford consumers'  
11 protection, or convenience, but rather, to protect  
12 the copyright holders' property interests.

13                   Moreover, as a practical matter,  
14 Plaintiffs have indicated no objection in principle  
15 to licensing their recordings to companies like  
16 MP3.com; they simply want to make sure they get the  
17 remuneration the law reserves for them as holders of  
18 copyrights in creative works.

19                   Stripped to its essence, Defendant's  
20 "consumer protection" argument amounts to nothing  
21 more than a bald claim that Defendant should be able  
22 to misappropriate Plaintiff's property simply  
23 because there is a consumer demand for it. This  
24 hardly appeals to the conscience of equity."

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           As Judge Rakoff makes clear, the goal of  
2 the Copyright Act is, in part, to enable copyright  
3 owners to license their works for a fee. There is  
4 nothing wrong or inappropriate about this. The fact  
5 that access control technologies facilitate such  
6 forms of commercialization of works is not only  
7 consistent with the intent of the Copyright Act  
8 generally, but the specific intent of Congress in  
9 enacting Section 1201(a)(1)(A).

10           Turning to specifics, the goals of this  
11 proceeding are clearly spelled out in the statute  
12 and relevant legislative history. Those who assert  
13 that the effective date of the Section 1201(a)(1)(A)  
14 prohibition should be further delayed shoulder an  
15 extraordinarily high burden of persuasion. They  
16 must demonstrate -- and I'm quoting here -- "through  
17 highly specific, strong and persuasive" evidence --  
18 and now I'm not quoting -- a likelihood that, over  
19 the next three years, the net impact of outlawing  
20 theft of passwords, unauthorized decryption or  
21 descrambling, and similar acts of circumvention will  
22 be to harm substantially the ability to make  
23 licensed, permitted or other non-infringing uses of  
24 specifically defined "classes" of copyrighted  
25 materials.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The arguments present in the submissions  
2 and the oral testimony make a number of arguments  
3 why the cause of action should not go into effect.  
4 We believe that each of these fails to make the case  
5 required by law.

6           Many submissions argue that Section  
7 1201(a)(1)(A) should not come into effect on October  
8 28, 2000 for any class of work. We believe that  
9 this would have the same effect as overturning the  
10 law through rulemaking, which I submit would clearly  
11 be wrong. Had Congress intended this as a  
12 possibility, it would not have enacted the cause of  
13 action at all.

14           The statute, by speaking about specific  
15 classes of works, clearly directs the Librarian to  
16 examine, on a case-by-case basis, the balance of  
17 interests in each case. The case must be persuasive  
18 and compelling, and addressed to specific classes of  
19 works, and not to broad types of works such as, for  
20 example, software.

21           A number of submissions are devoted to  
22 arguments specific to the software industry. These  
23 submissions argue that 1201(a)(1)(A) would impede  
24 reverse engineering of software. The interrelation  
25 between anticircumvention rules and acts of reverse

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 engineering -- and by which I mean legitimate acts  
2 of studying and analyzing the computer program --  
3 were considered in detail by the Congress in the  
4 course of its very long deliberations on the Digital  
5 Millennium Copyright Act.

6           Section 1201(f), as you know, was added  
7 by the Senate during its consideration of the Act.  
8 That section is a specific exception to  
9 1201(a)(1)(A) and thus reflects the deliberate  
10 judgment of the Congress in respect of exceptions  
11 determined to be appropriate. The legislative  
12 history of the Senate bill makes clear that the  
13 specific intent of the Senate in adding Section  
14 1201(f) was "to ensure that the effect of current  
15 case law interpreting the Copyright Act is not  
16 changed by enactment of this legislation for certain  
17 acts of identification and analysis done in respect  
18 of computer programs."

19           Section 1201(f) is obviously not the  
20 subject of this rulemaking. Whether changes to  
21 Section 1201(f) are appropriate -- and Adobe does  
22 not think any are needed -- is a matter for the  
23 Congress, and the Congress has not directed this  
24 rulemaking to consider that issue.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           If you will permit, I'd like to make one  
2 final point. The vast majority of the submissions  
3 argue that truly bad things will happen if  
4 technological measures can be used to control access  
5 to software and other works. But these arguments  
6 fail to recognize the fact that the use of such  
7 measures is not a new development.

8           As I mentioned already, software  
9 developers have long relied on technological  
10 protection measures. Passwords and serial code  
11 controls have been in use for over a decade.  
12 Encryption technologies have been used for more than  
13 five years. Over the years, companies have made  
14 many changes in how they use these technologies, in  
15 part as a response to consumers' needs, and in part  
16 to thwart pirates.

17           The submissions filed do not argue that  
18 the use of these technologies has inhibited the  
19 availability of works or harmed the legitimate user.  
20 Why do they not argue this? Because there is no  
21 evidence to bear out such a claim.

22           The gist of the arguments made is that  
23 creating this cause of action against hackers of  
24 copy protection technologies would somehow change  
25 everything. While the submissions raise a vast

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 array of hypothetical possibilities, I submit that  
2 none present compelling evidence that the ongoing  
3 practices have indeed created a problem.

4           There is substantial evidence, however,  
5 that hackers are developing and posting patches and  
6 other means aimed at defeating these technologies.  
7 Section 1201(a)(1)(A) gives us a powerful message to  
8 fight back, and this is what Congress intended.

9           Adobe and BSA respectfully submit that,  
10 based on the submissions and testimony to date, the  
11 record fails to demonstrate that any "particular  
12 class of works" is likely to be subject, over the  
13 next three years, to substantial adverse impact.  
14 Therefore, we argue that Section 1201(a)(1)(A)  
15 should take effect on October 28, 2000, as intended  
16 by the Congress.           Thank you, and I look  
17 forward to taking your questions later.

18           MR. SIMON: Thank you. Rather than  
19 reading another prepared statement, I thought I'd  
20 kind of try to take on some of the issues that have  
21 been raised in the various testimony to date, some  
22 in Washington, some here yesterday. And there are  
23 about five or six of these that I'd like to kind of  
24 quickly run through, and then I'd like to say a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433   WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701   www.nealrgross.com

1 couple more words about the reverse engineering  
2 issue as well.

3           The goal of the copyright law is not to  
4 promote use of works. It is in part to promote use  
5 of works, but that's only one of its goals. The  
6 goal of the copyright law is to promote creative  
7 expression. And somehow to read into this  
8 subsection of this rulemaking the notion that a  
9 predominant goal should be to promote use is simply  
10 wrong. That's not the intent of the act overall,  
11 that was not the intent of the Congress in enacting  
12 this.

13           What the Congress did is balance a  
14 series of interests, and it balanced, really, two  
15 sets of interests: the interests of those who  
16 create works, who make creative expressions and fix  
17 them; and those who enjoy the benefits of those  
18 works, we, society as a whole.

19           And it balanced the harm posed  
20 potentially by piracy to those who create, against  
21 the harm posed potentially to users through the  
22 application of technological measures to prevent  
23 that harm, to prevent that piracy.

24           In drafting 1201(a)(1) the Congress  
25 determined the harm of piracy was greater. That's

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 why the way this statute operates is the cause of  
2 action comes into effect. That's the fault  
3 presumption. It fails to come into effect only if  
4 there is some superseding compelling consideration.

5           And the question there is: Is there  
6 enough evidence now that wasn't there two years ago  
7 to justify that superseding consideration? And I  
8 think the answer is no. I think you have not heard  
9 any testimony of any particular instances beyond  
10 situations of mistake (like the Lexis situation of a  
11 mistake in distributing a CD-ROM that had a time-  
12 sensitive fuse on it) which actually suggests that  
13 there's harm, that there's a problem out there.

14           Is the mere presence of a technological  
15 protection measure enough to raise a red flag? I  
16 think the answer to that is clearly no. What the  
17 Congress said in this act in Section 1201 overall is  
18 that technological protection measures are  
19 appropriate, necessary means that it approves of to  
20 be used in the context of preventing people from  
21 stealing works.

22           The fact of the technological protection  
23 measure is not particularly liked by some people  
24 does not mean that it's a bad thing. But a lot of  
25 the testimony you have heard suggests that the mere

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 fact that somebody has applied a technological  
2 protection measure -- like The New York Times  
3 applying an access control measure to its articles  
4 creates a chilling effect and therefore creates a  
5 potential problem -- the statute is not about  
6 chilling effects.

7           The harm that has to be established here  
8 to suspend this cause of action is harm, actual or  
9 potential. And a chilling effect does not meet that  
10 test. There's nothing either in the legislative  
11 history, in the Congress debate of this, or in the  
12 statute itself that suggests that. In fact, there's  
13 a lot of discussion that's just the opposite.

14           Okay. Class of works versus category of  
15 works. Category of works is a term of art. It's a  
16 statutory concept which lists particular sets of  
17 things that fall into categories. Had the Congress  
18 intended for class to be read as broadly as that,  
19 it would have said category. Had the Congress  
20 intended for class to be read more broadly than  
21 category, it would have said that.

22           But in fact it said -- the legislative  
23 history suggests just the opposite. The examples  
24 that it gives is that class is somewhere between a  
25 category and an individual work. This piece of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 paper that I wrote this morning, somewhere between  
2 this and I guess all literary works is where class  
3 falls. And it probably falls a lot closer to the --  
4 you have to specifically figure out what that  
5 universe of works is, where the actual harm is.

6 Harm is not -- and the reason I believe  
7 that the Congress did this is because it did not  
8 want a consequence where if, for example, one could  
9 establish that chemistry textbooks, because they're  
10 subject to access controls, become much less  
11 available for educational purposes and that it  
12 causes harm in the sense of one of the five factors  
13 that have to be weighed here by the Librarian. But  
14 the fact that chemistry textbooks create that  
15 problem and that therefore all literary works --  
16 which is the category that the chemistry textbooks  
17 fall into -- should now no longer be subject to this  
18 rule of law, that's clearly not what the Congress  
19 meant, couldn't have been what the Congress meant.

20 Because with that, what you end up doing  
21 is sweeping an enormous universe of works out the  
22 door because there may potentially be a problem in  
23 one subsegment of that universe. So that's category  
24 versus class.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           Class is clearly much smaller than  
2 category, it's probably not as small as an  
3 individual identifiable work. But it's somewhere  
4 between that and probably closer to that end of the  
5 spectrum than it is to the end where categories sit.

6           Factors to be weighed in your  
7 determination. The statute actually lists that the  
8 Librarian has to examine five variables. And an  
9 enormous amount of attention has been paid to the  
10 fourth variable. That fourth variable says "the  
11 impact of prohibiting the circumvention of  
12 technological measure applied to copyrighted works  
13 has on criticism, comment and use, reporting,  
14 teaching, scholarship and research."

15           I also point out that in that list of  
16 five, it's a conjunctive, it's an "and." And you  
17 have to weigh the impact in each of those areas in  
18 order to make your determination, or for the  
19 Librarian to make his determination.

20           And I simply point to two of the other  
21 factors. The first factor talks about the  
22 availability for use of copyrighted works. And you  
23 have received a substantial amount of testimony from  
24 Paul, just a moment ago, and from others that the  
25 availability of technological measures to protect

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 our works is one of the reasons why we make works  
2 available in more convenient forms to users.

3           We talked yesterday about an example of  
4 what would happen if that CD-ROM containing those  
5 French cases had just not been available in digital  
6 form. That somebody would have gone to dozens of  
7 law journals in physical form and tracked them down,  
8 creating an enormous disincentive to research. The  
9 fact that those kinds of materials are available in  
10 digital form creates an enormous incentive to  
11 research, as well as other commercial markets.

12           So the availability of works has  
13 substantially increased, I would pose to you,  
14 because of the availability and the increased use of  
15 technological measures. That factor weighs no less  
16 and no more in the list of five than any other, and  
17 it can't be dismissed. It has to be weighed.

18           The second factor I'll point you to is  
19 the fourth one in the statute, the one that talks  
20 about the effect of circumvention measures on the  
21 market for, or value of copyrighted works. In  
22 making a determination that there may be harm -- for  
23 example, with respect to chemistry textbooks because  
24 in the classroom environment those textbooks become  
25 less available and it creates an impediment to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 teaching -- before you say that that is a  
2 dispositive and final decision, you have to look at  
3 the other factors. And one of the factors that you  
4 have to look at is what does that decision portend  
5 for the market for chemistry textbooks, the  
6 commercial market for chemistry textbooks. That's  
7 what the fourth factor talks about.

8           And again, it's a conjunctive between  
9 those factors. None of these is dispositive, and in  
10 making the determination you have to weigh all of  
11 them and balance them. This is ultimately a  
12 balancing exercise.

13           There's been a fair amount of discussion  
14 of the evils of a metered world, of a pay-per-use  
15 world. I find this baffling. A huge amount of  
16 commercial activity in our economy, global economy,  
17 is based on metered use. I rented a car at the  
18 airport yesterday. I pay so many dollars for so  
19 much time. If I want to keep it longer, I pay more.  
20 There's nothing wrong with that concept.

21           Telephone service. I pick up the phone  
22 to make a call, and I pay for the amount of time  
23 that I use it. Airport fees, airport user fees. We  
24 pay user fees. We pay a whole bunch of fees based  
25 upon use, upon the notion of the benefit that I

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 derive from that activity determines the price that  
2 I pay for it. That's at the core of a whole  
3 universe of economic activity.

4           The notion that that is now going to be  
5 applied to copyrighted works being wrong is, to me,  
6 baffling. Because if it's wrong to be applied to an  
7 intangible property interest like a copyright, why  
8 isn't it also wrong for it to be applied to any  
9 other property interest?

10           Like the fact that Hertz owns the car  
11 that I happen to be driving around. And gee, I  
12 really like this car. It's got this wonderful  
13 navigation device in it, so I never get lost. I'd  
14 love to take it home with me.

15           So I have initial lawful access -- and  
16 I'll get to that again in a second -- I have initial  
17 lawful access to this Hertz car, and it's got this  
18 wonderful navigation device in it. And actually,  
19 the thing that makes the navigation device is a  
20 combination of some hardware and some software.  
21 The software's copyrightable. Does that mean if I  
22 could figure out some way to just take that software  
23 out of there, and would only use it for fair use  
24 purposes -- I'd guarantee it, I swear -- does that  
25 mean that I could somehow take this because I have

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 initial lawful access to this car? I don't know.  
2 It just baffles me.

3           The notion that property can be parsed  
4 based upon the benefit that the user gets out of it,  
5 and the fee charged can be assigned in a way that  
6 corresponds to that benefit, that's a good thing for  
7 consumers.

8           If every time I flew to San Francisco I  
9 had to buy a new car, that would make no sense at  
10 all. And one of the increasing trends in the  
11 software industry is to make applications available  
12 off web pages, off the Internet, which enables  
13 people to use, for example, a tax-paying program so  
14 they can do their quarterly taxes by renting, in  
15 effect, the use of that software off the Internet  
16 instead of having to buy the product. Much cheaper.  
17 Plus, you're getting it constantly updated so you're  
18 getting the latest tax laws.

19           Isn't that a good thing that instead of  
20 my having to pay \$100 for this software program, I  
21 can pay \$4 once a quarter? So the business models  
22 are evolving in a way that creates fees based upon  
23 the benefit that is being derived. Technological  
24 protection measures are integral to making that  
25 possible. That's a good thing.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           Initial lawful use I think kind of has  
2 been done to death. But let's kick this one one  
3 more time. Initial lawful use was a concept that  
4 was much discussed within the legislative process  
5 that led to the enactment of the DMCA. It was a  
6 concept that was posited by many of the same parties  
7 who are putting it forward to you in this rulemaking  
8 proceeding.

9           The term does not appear in the statute  
10 because the Congress rejected the concept. For you  
11 to somehow read that concept into the statute where  
12 the Congress specifically rejected it would do  
13 violence to the role that's been assigned to the  
14 Librarian. It would be substantially outside the  
15 scope of his role and his authority.

16           It is not for the Librarian to make  
17 laws; it's for the Librarian to make rules  
18 implementing laws. It's not for those rules to  
19 overturn what the role of the Congress is.

20           I also find the concept of initial  
21 lawful use kind of baffling in the library context.  
22 Let's do a library context. I went to Georgetown  
23 Law School, and Georgetown Law School permits its  
24 alumni and its students to use the library but does  
25 not permit the general public to use the library.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           So does that mean that if, for some  
2 reason I, as an alumni, do have initial lawful  
3 access to that library on a wonderful Friday  
4 afternoon in May, does that mean that I can go into  
5 that library at four in the morning on Christmas Eve  
6 as well? The fact that I got in once legally, does  
7 that mean that I can get in again and again?  
8 Obviously, it doesn't. It can't mean that.

9           Does the fact that I took a book off the  
10 shelf and read it and used it for research mean that  
11 I can now take that book with me? Obviously, it  
12 doesn't. The notion of initial lawful access as the  
13 test simply supposes that there's only such a thing  
14 as one permission. I only have an on/off switch. I  
15 can give you permission or not give you permission.

16           That simply is contrary to all the  
17 business models that are evolving in a digital age,  
18 particularly for a software industry but I think for  
19 other industries as well. And if that is the rule  
20 that you would adopt -- which I would argue to you  
21 is simply not permitted because it's outside the  
22 scope of rulemaking because it was specifically  
23 rejected by the Congress -- but if that were to be  
24 the rule that you would adopt, you would defeat the  
25 entire purpose of this provision.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           There's a problem that's common to all  
2 the concepts that have been raised, of the  
3 categories that have been suggested to you, whether  
4 they're some variation on the initial lawful access  
5 notion or thin copyrighted works or some other  
6 concept. And the problem with them is that no  
7 matter how you try to parse them, they ultimately  
8 end up swallowing the whole rule.

9           There's really no way to say this is an  
10 initial lawful access, fair-use type, thin kind of  
11 work; and that isn't. They're all either one or the  
12 other. Fair use can be exercised with respect to  
13 anything.

14           Okay, last point. You really have only  
15 one determination to make, and that determination is  
16 adverse effect. It's really a harm test. You have  
17 to find harm. If you do not find harm, the inquiry  
18 stops. And the burden of finding harm is pretty  
19 high. The burden is for people to present to you  
20 specific instances where it has occurred. No harm,  
21 no action.

22           Resist the temptation to act. I  
23 understand, having been a bureaucrat, that  
24 bureaucrats don't like to do nothing. Bureaucrats  
25 like to do stuff. And I understand that you've been

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 charged with rulemaking, and you have this enormous  
2 temptation to do something. They're all fidgeting  
3 and smiling at me. Don't do anything. It's cool.  
4 You know, sometimes you avoid making mistakes when  
5 you do nothing.

6           Okay. One last word and that's about  
7 reverse engineering, which is an issue that is  
8 entirely outside the scope of this rulemaking. Let  
9 me say that again. It's entirely outside the scope  
10 of this rulemaking. It is a matter specifically,  
11 thoroughly, comprehensively addressed in Section  
12 1201(f), which creates a specific exception to  
13 1201(a)(1)(A). The Congress thought about it long  
14 and hard, fought about it, deliberated, and enacted  
15 it. That's it.

16           It may be a lousy rule, but it's not for  
17 you to say that. It's for the Congress to come back  
18 and think again and say, "Hey, we messed up. We've  
19 got to do it again." Or not. That is not the issue  
20 posed to you in this rulemaking. Thank  
21 you.

22           MS. PETERS: Thank you. Fred.

23           MR. WEINGARTEN: Thank you. Actually, I  
24 haven't been a bureaucrat in 20 years myself. My  
25 experience is that the typical bureaucrat doesn't

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 want to do anything. And so I'm here to urge you to  
2 do something.

3 My name is Fred Weingarten, also known  
4 as Rick or Frederick Weingarten. I direct the  
5 Office for Information Technology Policy for the  
6 American Library Association, OITP. We're a small  
7 research and analysis office for the Library  
8 Association.

9 And for the last year I've had the  
10 privilege of working for the five library  
11 associations in Washington -- the Association of  
12 Research Libraries, American Association of Law  
13 Libraries, Medical Library Association and the  
14 Special Library Association -- in addition to ALA in  
15 trying to do some background digging on this issue  
16 and support their efforts in this rulemaking. And  
17 so I'm pleased today to speak for all of those.

18 I come before you, not as a lawyer, nor  
19 even in fact as a librarian, as some of you may  
20 know. I'm a policy analyst. I've worked off and on  
21 on information policy, including intellectual  
22 property issues for many years. I was originally  
23 trained as a computer scientist, but my old  
24 colleagues have warned me long ago never to apply  
25 that word to myself these days.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   But I was a computing research manager  
2 for the National Science Foundation for many years.  
3 In fact, I made some of the early grants that led to  
4 the NSF.net and Internet, and, thus, may be the  
5 cause of some of this heartburn and churning that  
6 we're all going through these days.

7                   I've also worked at the Congressional  
8 Office of Technology Assessment where, in fact, in  
9 the '80s we did more than one study of the impact of  
10 technology on intellectual property law. And, in  
11 fact, the first study we did was for Senator  
12 Matthias and Bob Kastenmeyer's committees. And I'm  
13 sorry Steve Metalitz didn't make it because when he  
14 was working for Senator Matthias, we worked with him  
15 very closely on these issues.

16                   In our first report, one of the  
17 questions that the Congress had asked was whether  
18 they couldn't resolve some of these technology  
19 issues once and for all. Couldn't they pass a  
20 copyright law that anticipated technological change  
21 and struck the right balances so they didn't have to  
22 constantly revisit? And one of our answers was not  
23 very well welcomed because it was no. And I think  
24 this rulemaking here right now is evidence that we  
25 were right.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           You've really got an incredibly  
2 difficult task, I think. Partly because the law is  
3 really a very confusing law, many of the terms are  
4 vague, ambiguous. And in our view, in fact, the  
5 law's Section 1201 contains a basic paradox. And  
6 you're being asked to resolve that paradox in this  
7 rulemaking without a heck of a lot of guidance.

8           Although the description of the process  
9 of the bill made it sound very rational and  
10 deliberative and carefully thought out, that's not  
11 my recollection of how that bill came to pass. It  
12 was extremely contentious, right up to the end.  
13 Lots of different views, two different committees of  
14 jurisdiction in the House, all fighting over what it  
15 meant and what it should cover.

16           And so, in some sense, recourse to  
17 legislative history for guidance is not too useful,  
18 either. But other people closer to that have  
19 already testified for us on that. But we would say  
20 that we think that itself is a debatable proposition  
21 for this panel to think about.

22           And, finally, you're really dealing with  
23 fundamental issues. I mean, copyright law is rooted  
24 in the Constitution. Rental cars aren't. So the  
25 basic conflict between the public interest and all

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 of those terms in the law that we sort of encompass  
2 with the term fair use -- with small F, small U --  
3 are deeply embedded public policy values, and one  
4 can't dismiss them lightly.

5           So we've raised in our responses and in  
6 our testimony, I realize, some broad issues, broad  
7 concerns, maybe uncomfortably broad. But we think  
8 it's very important for this panel to consider the  
9 fundamental public policy environment in which the  
10 rulemaking is taking place. And we understand that,  
11 at the end of the process, you have to go into a  
12 room and really decide specific words and get into  
13 details. And that is a tough problem for you. But  
14 there is a context that I think we really need to  
15 raise.

16           I mentioned that the law has a basic  
17 paradox. And the basic question before this panel  
18 is whether technological measures intended to  
19 control access to digital works also prevent users  
20 from exercising their rights under copyright law to  
21 use the material in non-authorized but non-  
22 infringing ways. And it seems patently obvious to  
23 us that they do.

24           In the first place, circumvention is  
25 defined by the law as bypassing a technological

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 measure without authorization. Fair use and other  
2 limitations in the law are, by definition,  
3 unauthorized uses. Therefore, unless the  
4 technological measure itself is programmed to step  
5 aside -- or in some sense, maybe pre-authorize  
6 unauthorized use -- it must block a non-infringing  
7 lawful use. And that's a basic paradox in the law.

8           Let me say that, as an aside, that it's  
9 not clear to me from my long ago technical training,  
10 that the technology needs to be that rigid. That we  
11 can't have fair-use soft or fair-use friendly  
12 technological measures that achieve the objectives  
13 of preventing piracy and yet are flexible enough to  
14 allow public interest to be fully exercised.

15           But that's an area in which we, in fact,  
16 in my office are trying to open a dialogue with  
17 people in the industry with some of the newer  
18 entrepreneurial e-book and e-library firms. We've  
19 started talking with them and, in fact, would like  
20 to work out some sort of convergence of library  
21 service models and business models that doesn't end  
22 up in a food fight in Washington, which doesn't help  
23 anybody. Although it pays my salary.

24           It seems to me that there are four  
25 questions that you have before you. One, does a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 technological measure that controls use also control  
2 access? The answer is yes. And I'll discuss that a  
3 little later, but I think the record for the hearing  
4 has clearly established that.

5                   Second question. Are there now or are  
6 there likely to be in the next three years  
7 technological measures that persistently control  
8 access or use after a user has lawfully acquired a  
9 work? Again, we think the record unambiguously  
10 establishes that the answer is yes. Such measures  
11 already exist, and these persistent controls are  
12 really central to business models envisioned by the  
13 content community.

14                   What works will be or are protected by  
15 such measures? Well, I think one could reverse the  
16 question and say what won't be. Let me just read --  
17 Steve isn't here, but let me just read the range of  
18 industries he will be representing when he  
19 testifies: Film Marketing Association; Society of  
20 Composers, Authors and Publishers; Media  
21 Photographers; Publishers; Association of American  
22 University Presses; Authors Guild; Broadcast Music;  
23 Business Software Alliance; Directors Guild;  
24 Interactive Digital Software; McGraw-Hill Companies;  
25 Motion Picture Association; Music Publishers'

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Association; Professional Photographers; Recording  
2 Industry.

3           These people are all interested in this  
4 hearing. Why are they interested in it? Because  
5 they all want to use technological measures to  
6 protect and market their works. So how can we,  
7 then, say "Well, it's just this work that is of  
8 concern to us."

9           The other reason that we look for a  
10 broad exemption, of course, is that libraries don't  
11 like to play favorites. We serve an incredibly  
12 diverse community. Different libraries serve  
13 different communities, and it is hard to imagine a  
14 kind of work that is not in our concern that we be  
15 able to provide our patrons with access to it.

16           So what's the harm? Well, we believe  
17 that the record has established the existence of  
18 harm in four ways. First, we argue that since fair  
19 use is basic public policy rooted in copyright law,  
20 a balance required by the Constitution, any  
21 diminution of it through strict interpretation of  
22 Section 1201 is de facto serious harm.

23           You're removing from the public a basic  
24 right they have or a privilege -- however you might

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 use the term -- under copyright law. And we should  
2 not have to go any further.

3           Those rights and privileges have been  
4 established for 300 years. First in British common  
5 law, and then in U.S. law. It's been upheld by the  
6 Supreme Court for many years. It's basic public  
7 policy. Why should we have to show and re-establish  
8 and re-argue something that has been in the law for  
9 300 years?

10           Secondly, current experience with  
11 licensed products in which license terms are  
12 protected by technological measures shows that harm  
13 is already being experienced in areas such as  
14 archival rights and first sale. Libraries, the  
15 Copyright Office and the Librarian have every  
16 legitimate reason to presume that these limitations  
17 are just the leading edge of a rapid technological  
18 trend, and that such harm will undoubtedly increase  
19 over the next three years. And I'll get back to  
20 this issue of why I use term "licensing." I'll get  
21 back to that in a minute.

22           Third, although the operative section of  
23 the law has not yet come into force, it is  
24 reasonable to presume that when it does, the threat  
25 of criminal penalties on users, coupled with the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 vague and broad nature of the anticircumvention  
2 provisions, is going to result in a severely  
3 chilling effect. It may have seemed, based  
4 on some of the testimony or some of the responses,  
5 that librarians just can't wait to get out there and  
6 hack. And just can't wait to provide havens for  
7 piracy for their users. In fact, what I've observed  
8 in my years working for the Library Association is  
9 that librarians tend to be a fairly conservative  
10 lot.

11 They really have other things to do than  
12 to try to figure out from day to day what the  
13 copyright law is letting them do or not. And in  
14 such an ambiguous environment, if there's threat of  
15 criminal penalties particularly or lawsuit, their  
16 answer will be no, even if the result is harm to the  
17 user or denying the user access that they might have  
18 legal rights to.

19 Fourth, it's clear that these controls  
20 are not only for the purpose of preventing piracy,  
21 but they are to implement and enforce a new pay-per-  
22 use model on all information users. Now, let me say  
23 that we're not asking you to overturn a pay-per-use  
24 business model. That's not the job of the Copyright  
25 Office, not the job of copyright law.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           But it is the job of copyright law to  
2 retain a balanced social policy in that environment.  
3 And, in fact, if we are moving towards that model of  
4 information sale, the role that libraries and  
5 schools play in providing safety-valve access to the  
6 information works is even more important. And it's  
7 even more important to protect that role.

8           Let me quote from just one publicity  
9 announcement from a vendor. And I'm not going to  
10 name the vendor in this. I really don't want to pick  
11 out and embarrass a particular firm. It really  
12 reflects, I think, the view of the industry.

13           "This firm has developed a way for  
14 publishers --" and I'm quoting -- "to receive  
15 revenue each time a student accesses even a single  
16 page of a title. This has never been possible  
17 before. Thus, older titles and out of print books  
18 that have been read and studied thousands of times  
19 over the years in libraries (yet have not generated  
20 new income) will now produce new revenues and become  
21 more valuable assets to publishers."

22           Now, if that isn't a basic threat to the  
23 fundamental role that libraries have served and  
24 schools have served over the last couple hundred  
25 years, I don't know what is. We're not speculating

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 here; we're not imagining problems. We're saying  
2 that this move to a pay-per-use model threatens the  
3 very basic foundations of what libraries and schools  
4 are all about. And it is important, if that is  
5 happening, for us to provide or protect the safety-  
6 valves inherent in fair use.

7                   Let me finish by addressing four  
8 particular topics that I think have caused some  
9 confusion in the past. And although my addressing  
10 them will probably increase rather than decrease the  
11 confusion, I've been wanting to do this after  
12 watching all five days of hearings.

13                   The first is the problem of access and  
14 use. I think for the purposes of Section 1201,  
15 there's simply no useful distinction between the  
16 term "access" and "use." Section 1201 does not  
17 prevent circumvention for use. Every time one uses  
18 a digital work one accesses it. All technological  
19 controls control access.

20                   So if one wants to extract from a work,  
21 one wants to print a work, one wants to play a movie  
22 on a DVD or play a song off of a CD, or view a  
23 picture, what you're really doing is accessing even  
24 though, from your terms, it's a use. So access is  
25 inseparable from use.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   And in my testimony I quote Judge Kaplan  
2 on the Reimerdes case. That may be the only thing  
3 that Judge Kaplan said that we might agree on, but  
4 we think that he clearly views access as playing the  
5 DVD on a computer.

6                   Secondly, the problem of persistent  
7 controls. We've called these measures that continue  
8 to control access after the work is initially  
9 acquired persistent controls. That can be as simple  
10 as a database system that requires repeated use of a  
11 password each time one logs on to use it. Or they  
12 can be far more complex as technology evolves.

13                   These persistent controls are not just  
14 for the purpose of protecting against piracy, but to  
15 develop and enforce new business models, many which  
16 seek to charge for uses that in the past been free  
17 once a work has been lawfully obtained.

18                   Once again, we're not against the  
19 development of those new business models. But we  
20 don't think copyright law needs to be invoked to  
21 protect particular business strategies. Let me  
22 quote from a report by an industry marketing firm  
23 that serves the publishing industry:

24                   "For the past several years, digital  
25 rights management (DRM) has focused primarily on

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 protecting digital content from illegal or unwanted  
2 uses." And you've heard a lot about that in the  
3 five days of testimony.

4 "Lately, though, the scope and emphasis  
5 has been evolving to include more than just  
6 copyright protection ... the pressures and  
7 opportunities in digital markets are forcing both  
8 publishers and their vendors to take a broader view  
9 of what a digital rights management platform  
10 entails."

11 And yet Section 1201, under the guise of  
12 copyright law, is expected to protect all of those  
13 possible models, all of those possible ways of  
14 distributing information.

15 I'd like to talk a bit about  
16 circumvention. Many times I've heard the panel ask  
17 presenters whether they have had any experience with  
18 circumvention. And I've really wished that any one  
19 of them has fired back a question, what is a  
20 circumvention? What do you mean?

21 Since the definition of technological  
22 measure is so broad and all-encompassing that it can  
23 even include passwords and library cards -- as we  
24 established in our comments -- what does  
25 circumvention mean? Does using a password to access

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 a database, to use it in a way that is not  
2 authorized in terms of the license a circumvention?  
3 I don't know. But I haven't heard anybody tell me  
4 it isn't.

5 That makes it very difficult for a  
6 librarian to say whether or not she has circumvented  
7 or not. Will misuse of a library card now become a  
8 federal crime because it is a circumvention to  
9 access a database in a library?

10 Linda Crowe's library offers access to  
11 an online database system that requires a password  
12 and a library card as an identification and entry  
13 measure. Suppose somebody in that district loans  
14 their library card and password to a visiting  
15 relative, who then goes to the library and uses it  
16 to download some information for a school project.  
17 Has that person now become a federal felon for  
18 circumventing 1201? I'm not sure that they haven't.

19 Now, we might say, "Well, they would  
20 never prosecute such a person," and so on. But that  
21 raises a problem that Bob Kastenmeyer used to worry  
22 about all the time, whether we're creating in our  
23 copyright law the essence of a prohibition that  
24 essentially makes scofflaws and criminals of us all

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 by winking at minor offenses, and we'll decide what  
2 a major offense is.

3           Finally, I'd like to talk a bit about  
4 the relationship between licensing and controls  
5 because that's come up several times. So let me  
6 suggest some considerations, because they do wrap  
7 together and are very difficult to pull apart.

8           But basically there's no direct  
9 relationship between the technological issue and  
10 licensing. Section 1201 is part of copyright law.  
11 Licensing is a contract, a private contract. So we  
12 have no objection to knowledgeable parties,  
13 consenting adults, agreeing to anything they want to  
14 agree to. Librarians do this all the time. What we  
15 object is criminal measures under copyright law  
16 being tangled up in that.

17           People can license away anything they  
18 want. That has nothing to do with whether Section  
19 1201 and fair use in Section 1201 should be  
20 protected and interpreted.

21           And I'd also like to point to Jim Neal's  
22 testimony -- and Lolly mentioned this yesterday also  
23 and I think Karen Coyle did -- that copyright law  
24 does set some boundary in negotiating licenses, sets  
25 some basic principles.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   Second, technological measures can  
2 really restrict negotiation. Because as they become  
3 more and more embedded in the work itself, it  
4 becomes non-negotiable. You can negotiate until  
5 you're blue in the face, but if the technological  
6 measure is part of the work itself, there's nothing  
7 to negotiate.

8                   Unbalanced enforcement. If the database  
9 provider that Linda Crowe works with decides that  
10 that misuse of the password and library card  
11 violates the terms of the license, they can jolly  
12 well go to court and sue for breach of contract.  
13 And if Linda thinks they're being too rigid, she can  
14 go to court and sue.

15                   Disputes in contract law can be resolved  
16 in court and are all the time. What Section 1201  
17 does, if not equipped with an exemption, is bring  
18 the weight of criminal law against one party in that  
19 dispute, in addition to breach of contract. That's  
20 an unfair balancing. That's an interference of  
21 copyright law with licensing, not a support.

22                   And, finally, given the trend towards  
23 UCITA and non-negotiated license, the idea that  
24 there's some negotiation that goes on between  
25 consumers of information products -- even libraries

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 and their providers -- I think is growing dim. But  
2 that's another fight.

3 In conclusion, much of our testimony has  
4 sounded alarming and negative, I think, over the  
5 last five days. Deliberately so. We're engaged in  
6 an advocacy proceeding here. But, in fact, most  
7 libraries have embraced technological change.

8 We believe that to the information  
9 society in this new century, libraries will be even  
10 more important, serving the public, supporting  
11 health research, care providers, the legal  
12 community, underpinning vital research in  
13 educational missions of our schools, colleges and  
14 universities.

15 We also believe that content providers  
16 should be exploring new ways to serve their public  
17 and expanding markets for their work. That's  
18 perfectly fine. That's good. We use their  
19 products. And copyright is an important tool for  
20 them to do so. We're not against copyright. We're  
21 not trying to undo the DMCA.

22 Of course, libraries are also exploring  
23 new forms of service models using these new  
24 technologies. There's no reason why both interests  
25 can't be served, why this can't be a win-win

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 technological change for society and for the  
2 creators and for the publishers. One goal need not  
3 be achieved at the expense of the other.

4           Public services provided by libraries  
5 and educational institutions does not threaten, but  
6 if anything, enhances business opportunities.  
7 Copyright law extends rights to creators, but in the  
8 name of the public interest it also assigns  
9 responsibilities to them in the form of limitations  
10 and exceptions.

11           They're not new ideas; they date back to  
12 the earliest days of copyright law. Nor are they  
13 trivial. They've served our society well for 200  
14 years. We see neither technological reasons nor  
15 economic reasons to sweep them under the table now  
16 in the guise of controlling access to protect  
17 against piracy.

18           A broad use-based exemption would be a  
19 strong statement that the public interest continues  
20 to be served in the digital age. Thank you.

21           MS. PETERS: Thank you. We'll have our  
22 question and answer session begin with Charlotte  
23 Douglass.

24           MS. DOUGLASS: Thank you. I found all  
25 the testimony quite informative. I'd like to get

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 into just a little bit the question of reverse  
2 engineering. I know you said it two times at least.  
3 So it's reverse engineering, reverse engineering,  
4 reverse engineering. It's supposed to take, like, I  
5 divorce you, I divorce you, I divorce you.

6 But I'm going to raise it one more time.  
7 And that has to do with -- suppose there is an  
8 adverse effect? It seems to me that Section  
9 1201(a)(1) is supposed to address adverse effects.  
10 So that if the Librarian did find an adverse effect  
11 as to which non-infringing could not be made, is the  
12 Librarian prohibited from dealing with reverse  
13 engineering at all or finding that there is an  
14 adverse effect that could be remedied by reverse  
15 engineering or a computer program, for example?

16 MR. SIMON: Is reverse engineering a  
17 class of works?

18 MS. DOUGLASS: No.

19 MR. SIMON: Thank you. Your rulemaking  
20 is limited to classes of works. You can have  
21 reverse engineering of a whole universe of stuff,  
22 not just computer programs. So this notion somehow  
23 that reverse engineering requires some specific  
24 treatment within this rulemaking is really -- again,  
25 it confuses me.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   Because this rulemaking speaks to  
2 specific classes of works where harm is established.  
3 It does not speak about, necessarily, what the cause  
4 of the harm is. The Congress addressed a potential  
5 cause of harm in Section 1201(f).

6                   MS. DOUGLASS: That referred to computer  
7 programs, and I think I heard someone say that  
8 computer programs was a category of works, but it  
9 was not a class of works.

10                  MR. SIMON: It is. Read 102, Charlotte.  
11 It's not a category of works. It's a literary work.

12                  MS. DOUGLASS: Absolutely, absolutely.

13                  MR. SIMON: So it's not a category of  
14 works.

15                  MS. DOUGLASS: So, okay. So that could  
16 be in a class of works?

17                  MR. SIMON: It could, if you were to  
18 interpret the statute as saying all computer  
19 programs belong to a single class. The reality is  
20 that there are hundreds of kinds of computer  
21 programs. There are games, there are application  
22 products, there are operating systems, there are  
23 business products, there are consumer-aimed  
24 products.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           So the question would arise, even if you  
2 were to hypothetically entertain the question which  
3 you asked me -- which I think is a fundamentally  
4 wrong question -- the question is, is the harm with  
5 respect to what kind of software? Is it with  
6 respect to computer-aided design software?

7           And are you then going to create an  
8 exception for the entire class of any computer  
9 program as defined in the statute? Which these  
10 days, frankly, includes music and movies. Because  
11 if you look at the definition of what a computer  
12 program is under the act, it's anything that has a  
13 series of instructions that performs particular  
14 function.

15           So now you've gone back to, well, what  
16 are you excluding? You're excluding not just  
17 categories -- not a category, but categories. So it  
18 doesn't make any sense to me.

19           MS. DOUGLASS: Okay. Thank you.

20           MR. SIMON: You're welcome.

21           MS. DOUGLASS: Do you have any further  
22 comment on that at all?

23           MR. HUGHES: Other than to say that I  
24 agree with Emery, section 1201(f), I guess, was  
25 beamed in maybe midway through the long DMCA process

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 on Capitol Hill and was beamed in specifically  
2 because there were people who were concerned about  
3 the potential negative effect of Section 1201 on  
4 reverse engineering for the purposes of  
5 interoperability.

6           And they wanted a specific section --  
7 the advocates of this concern wanted a specific  
8 section of 1201 dealing with that. And they got it.  
9 And indeed, you know, by analogy we have, as you  
10 know, another section dealing with encryption  
11 research and another section dealing with security  
12 testing, firewalls, that sort of thing. So  
13 certainly it would be my read that those would fall  
14 outside the scope of 1201(a).

15           MR. SIMON: The rulemaking.

16           MR. HUGHES: The rulemaking. And  
17 indeed, therefore this rulemaking.

18           MS. DOUGLASS: Okay. We had a comment  
19 about Fontographer. And one commenter said that in  
20 some situations there was a Fontographer program  
21 where he was licensed to program, but there was a  
22 glitch in the software. And for some reason that  
23 the copyright owner didn't have in mind, he could  
24 not access that program.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   Now, would he be prevented from fixing  
2 that glitch by 1201(a)(1)(A) if it came into force  
3 without an exemption, with respect to that?

4                   MR. HUGHES: I'm afraid I'm not familiar  
5 with the specific case. It's hard to answer.  
6 Fontographer is probably a product developed by a  
7 company called Altsys, that was then bought by  
8 Macromedia. And I guess they haven't done any new  
9 revision of this program in quite a long time.

10                   But I'm not, frankly -- you know,  
11 obviously there's a licensing issue, whether the  
12 license would prohibit reverse engineering. But  
13 actually, as far as I know, this program is an old  
14 enough program that I'm not sure, in fact, it's  
15 protected. This is pure speculation at this point  
16 because I've never used the program.

17                   But I'm not actually sure it's protected  
18 by a technological protection. And that would then  
19 be the issue. If it were, then I would say it would  
20 be covered by the 1201(a)(1)(A) prohibition. Emery?

21                   MR. SIMON: I don't know what the  
22 problem is, Charlotte. There's a glitch in the  
23 program?

24                   MS. DOUGLASS: Yes.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. SIMON: This person's trying to  
2 engage in what, error correction?

3                   MS. DOUGLASS: Yes.

4                   MR. SIMON: And he can't do so because  
5 what?

6                   MS. DOUGLASS: Because the error  
7 correction required that he override some kind of  
8 technological control. And he's afraid to do that  
9 because of 1201(a)(1). He would be afraid of doing  
10 that.

11                   MR. SIMON: Well, would be is -- I mean,  
12 I can't answer that question. I don't know the  
13 product, I have no idea what the technological  
14 control is.

15                   MR. HUGHES: Actually, maybe I could  
16 just leap in with an analogy that I think is  
17 somewhat on point. Firstly, this product is from a  
18 company -- you know, it's still in business as far  
19 as I know. It's still a supported product.  
20 So I would say that his first course of action would  
21 be to deal with the company.

22                   But then kind of stepping back, I think  
23 this is -- presumably in your example, the person  
24 who wants to do this bug-fixing, for whatever  
25 reason, either doesn't want to deal with the company

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 or doesn't -- I'm speculating doesn't want to follow  
2 the steps that the company wants him or her to  
3 follow and so wants to take some alternate course of  
4 action.

5 I think it would be a little bit like  
6 one of the examples Emery cited. I mean, suppose I  
7 dropped off my clothes at the drycleaner, and I  
8 prepaid for them. Just follow me here. But it  
9 wasn't convenient for me to come back and pick up my  
10 clothes during the hours that the drycleaner was  
11 open so I decided I wanted to come back at some  
12 completely different time, break into the store and  
13 get the clothes.

14 I mean, it seems to me if this computer  
15 program were actually covered by technological  
16 protection measures -- and I'm not sure it is --  
17 your user is putting his convenience above the  
18 rights of the company that published the program to  
19 protect their property.

20 In other words, he's saying, "I don't  
21 want to follow the steps that the company may have  
22 provided for me to fix the program. I want to kind  
23 of hack it myself." And I think Congress' intent  
24 here is clearly that the company should have the  
25 right to control it.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MS. DOUGLASS:  Maybe he can't follow the  
2 steps.  Maybe he can't get a hold of the company.  
3 Maybe the company folded or something like that.  
4 And, of course, some people might answer "Well,  
5 what's the problem?  Because the company folded, the  
6 company's not around to sue you anyhow."

7                   So I mean, I was just trying to get at,  
8 you know, if it's an extremely minor glitch and the  
9 person was trying to fix a bug to operate the work,  
10 whether that should be something within the scope of  
11 an exemption, and I get your clear answer so thank  
12 you.

13                   Bear with me for one second, please.  I  
14 thought I had a question for you, Mr. Weingarten,  
15 but I think I don't right now.  If I get it later,  
16 maybe I can ask.  Thank you.

17                   MS. PETERS:  Rob.

18                   MR. KASUNIC:  Good morning.  I think I  
19 want to start by returning to the issue of reverse  
20 engineering for a minute.  And just to clarify that,  
21 going into the scope of what is a class of works and  
22 how reverse engineering fits in.

23                   First of all, reverse engineering would  
24 be a form of circumvention; wouldn't that be true?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433   WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701   www.nealrgross.com

1                   MR. SIMON: Not necessarily. Not  
2 necessarily. If there is no technological  
3 protection measure in place, there's no  
4 circumvention.

5                   MR. KASUNIC: Okay. So if we're dealing  
6 with a situation where there's a technological  
7 protection measure, then in order to -- if there was  
8 an exemption to circumvention, reverse engineering  
9 would be a way to accomplish that?

10                  MR. SIMON: If you were doing it for the  
11 statutorily-permitted purpose.

12                  MR. KASUNIC: Okay. And then in terms  
13 of -- there was some discussion about class of  
14 works, categories of works that talked about finding  
15 computer -- that Charlotte had asked whether  
16 computer programs could be seen as a class of works.  
17 And you said, I think, Mr. Simon, that that could be  
18 too broad as a category.

19                  When you were citing the legislative  
20 history before, in terms of narrowing, you were  
21 citing references in the legislative history to  
22 narrow it from categories. You were saying a  
23 particular part that you mentioned -- for instance,  
24 motion pictures were cited as something that could  
25 be a category of works.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           Isn't computer programs exactly related  
2 in that way to -- it's something less than a  
3 category, but you talked about things like  
4 particular games, for instance. Wouldn't that be  
5 something that would be too narrow in that same  
6 section of the legislative history?

7           MR. SIMON: No. The legislative history  
8 speaks specifically to that issue as well. There  
9 are examples in there about motion pictures; there  
10 are examples in the legislative history about  
11 software as well. And what it does is, it says it's  
12 not all of software. It's some subdivision of  
13 software.

14           MR. KASUNIC: And so could that  
15 subdivision be something related to a particular  
16 type of use then, as opposed to just a particular  
17 genre of it, like games?

18           MR. SIMON: That's not what the statute  
19 speaks to. It speaks to classes of works. It does  
20 not speak to uses of classes of works. It talks  
21 about users, but it does not -- I mean, there are  
22 different people that use different works in  
23 different ways. So to define a class of uses, I'm  
24 not quite sure how you do that.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   A word-processing application is used by  
2 a huge universe of users. So the statute speaks  
3 about the users. It doesn't speak about the uses  
4 they put it to. If the definition had been  
5 contingent upon function or purpose, then that's  
6 what the statute would have said. It doesn't.

7                   MR. KASUNIC: Well, I'm not sure I  
8 understand how you can say that the statute doesn't  
9 speak to uses when there is quite an abundance of --  
10 the focus being on adverse effect of non-infringing  
11 uses.

12                  MR. SIMON: No. The statute speaks to  
13 users.

14                  MR. KASUNIC: It says in Subsection D  
15 that "non-infringing uses by persons who are users  
16 of a copyrighted work are likely to be adversely  
17 affected." So there is certainly a part of the  
18 focus is on the particular use that that phrase is  
19 used in there. Should we just completely ignore  
20 that part?

21                  MR. SIMON: Well, maybe I can help you  
22 better if you were to explain to me the relevance to  
23 the particular example that you're raising of that  
24 concept.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           MR. KASUNIC: Well, I'm just trying to  
2 focus in how we -- with this class of works and the  
3 narrowing, that there is a certain amount of --  
4 there isn't anything specifically that says how this  
5 can be defined or that necessarily limits within how  
6 the Librarian can define a class of works. So that  
7 there are certain considerations that are brought  
8 into this with non-infringing uses, users and that  
9 can go into that consideration of class of works.

10           MR. SIMON: Do you think the fact that  
11 this Congress has spoken specifically to the issue  
12 of interoperability and reverse engineering for that  
13 purpose is relevant to the determination of harm?

14           MR. KASUNIC: Well, I don't think I  
15 should be testifying on that. But I would ask you  
16 that question.

17           MR. SIMON: Well, I've answered that  
18 question. I think it's dispositive on the issue.

19           MR. KASUNIC: But the fact that there is  
20 this scope of non-infringing uses, and looking at  
21 adverse effects, that that doesn't have -- even if  
22 that was found in that particular area of computer  
23 programs, that that would not -- because there is  
24 some mention of reverse engineering, that that would

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433   WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701   www.nealrgross.com

1 take this outside the scope of the Librarian's  
2 authority?

3 MR. SIMON: The statute speaks to one  
4 area where reverse engineering is permitted, and  
5 that's for the purpose of interoperability. That  
6 was the area where the Congress thought there was a  
7 danger, and it spoke to that danger. If it had  
8 thought there were other areas where there was a  
9 danger in this particular narrow area, it would have  
10 spoken to those as well. It did not.

11 So for you to now somehow read the  
12 congressional examination as incomplete or as  
13 erroneous, and for you to find other areas of danger  
14 than the ones that Congress found, I don't quite  
15 know how you get there.

16 MR. KASUNIC: Well, isn't an essential  
17 part of this whole 1201(a)(1) that it's continuing  
18 in nature, that technology does not stay static?  
19 And so we have a situation where this has to be  
20 monitored over time, and that if changes had  
21 occurred from the time when this was initially  
22 enacted, there has been some time that has passed,  
23 wouldn't that be relevant to our inquiry?

24 MR. SIMON: Sure. Show me the harm.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. KASUNIC: Okay. But it is relevant  
2 that conditions can change and that the situation  
3 that affected the reverse engineering at the time  
4 could at some later time be relevant?

5                   MR. SIMON: Hypothetically, anything's  
6 possible. Show me the harm.

7                   MR. KASUNIC: Let me switch to Mr.  
8 Weingarten for a second. There was -- I give you an  
9 opportunity, since Mr. Metalitz is not here to  
10 respond to -- part of the argument that was made in  
11 his comments -- and see what your response would be  
12 to the fact he said that Congress spoke to non-  
13 infringing uses, but it was primarily speaking to  
14 permitted or licensed uses, as opposed to fair use.

15                   And the rationale being that fair use is  
16 not always a non-infringing use, but that only  
17 permitted or authorized uses are really always non-  
18 infringing uses. How do you think that that fits  
19 into it?

20                   MR. WEINGARTEN: It's too torturous for  
21 me to deal with. Actually, that's a question of  
22 interpretation of law that -- I think you had  
23 offered to send me written questions. I would like  
24 you to send that question in writing to Arnie. That

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 might be more direct. I don't even understand the  
2 question.

3 MR. KASUNIC: Okay. Well, you did talk  
4 about fair use as a basic public policy. And how  
5 would you explain, then, the absence of the  
6 preservation of that basic public policy within the  
7 statute itself? There was discussion that Congress  
8 had the option of including a broad exemption for  
9 fair use within 1201, but chose not to include that  
10 as one of the specific exemptions. How would you  
11 explain that?

12 MR. WEINGARTEN: It's a very tough,  
13 contentious debate. And that law was hotly debated  
14 all the way to the end. In fact, these terms of  
15 1201 were hotly debated to the end. If Congress  
16 hadn't been troubled by it, this ruling wouldn't  
17 have been called for.

18 And I think the idea that they  
19 established the rulemaking, but established the bar  
20 of proof so high that no exemption could be -- you  
21 know, nobody could possibly meet that test is to  
22 trivialize the decision to establish this.

23 I don't think Congress really was  
24 comfortable -- I mean, we're talking about 535  
25 people as if they're one person sitting there. But

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 I don't think that Congress as a body was fully  
2 comfortable with that paradox that I referred to in  
3 my testimony that basic public interest was going to  
4 be fully served by the restrictions in 1201. And  
5 this rulemaking was sort of the uncomfortable  
6 compromise that came out of it.

7                   So I don't think it would be fair to  
8 say, "Well, they decided and didn't clearly exempt  
9 non-infringing uses; therefore, they didn't intend  
10 to." I think their discomfort is clear, and that  
11 this is a meaningful rulemaking because of that.

12                   MR. KASUNIC: Well, on the same issue of  
13 fair use and the other two DSA panel, Mr. Hughes, in  
14 your testimony you mentioned that the goal of  
15 copyright is to enable copyright owners to license  
16 their works for a fee.

17                   There is, however, other case law from  
18 that which you cited where the Supreme Court has  
19 clearly stated that that's not the primary goal of  
20 copyright -- the reward to the owner -- but rather  
21 was a secondary consideration, and the primary goal  
22 would be the general public benefit.

23                   How does -- isn't that something that  
24 should be a factor in this balancing that is a part  
25 of this process that you folks talked about?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. HUGHES: No, I think absolutely.  
2 And we talked about, you know, the different  
3 simultaneous goals of copyright law. And indeed, in  
4 your rulemaking, I would argue that this five-part  
5 test that Emery discussed some of is indeed a  
6 balancing exercise.

7                   But I think it might be worthwhile just  
8 to kind of step back a little bit, and, you know,  
9 just keep in perspective why 1201(a)(1)(A) -- too  
10 many letters there -- is here in the first place.  
11 And that is because Congress recognized, and indeed,  
12 the Administration earlier when it was negotiating  
13 the WIPO copyright treaties as you all know,  
14 recognized what a problem piracy was in the digital  
15 age.

16                   I mean, we probably don't have time for  
17 it, but I could give you lots of examples of ways in  
18 which our products have been ripped off and ways in  
19 which this section of law will, in a way, help us  
20 return as it were to the sort of status quo before  
21 the Internet by protecting our products.

22                   Because I think it's self-evident that  
23 in the copyright world there have always been both  
24 legal but also just kind of physical impediments to  
25 piracy. I mean, you know, it's physically possible

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 to xerox a book, but it would cost money and it's a  
2 pain in the tush. You know, who would want to do  
3 it?

4                   And what technological protection  
5 measures on digital works let us do is basically the  
6 same thing: reimpose some sort of difficulty, as it  
7 were, in pirating works. In a way, it's a means of  
8 self-help. But there's also a very positive thing.

9                   1201(a)(1)(A) is not just about us an  
10 industry playing defense. I think it's also  
11 important to keep in perspective this is really an  
12 enabling technology for consumers. I mean, it lets  
13 us do all kinds of neat things, and offer all sorts  
14 of new technologies that we wouldn't have been able  
15 to offer before.

16                   I mean, a great example is "trialware,"  
17 which you've probably seen if you surf the Internet  
18 a fair amount. You know, in the past when you  
19 wanted to buy software, you had to go into the  
20 store, you'd have to buy the box. And if the  
21 software didn't work out for you, you didn't like  
22 its features, you'd have to return it. And, indeed,  
23 certainly Adobe's license lets you do that, but it's  
24 a real bother.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The neat thing about trialware is, from  
2 our website for most of our products, you can  
3 download a completely functional, full working  
4 version of our products with complete documentation.  
5 It just has a time-out on it.

6           So after 30 days or 90 days, whatever --  
7 you know, we disclose right up front, your time's  
8 up. And you as a consumer can then decide if you  
9 want to buy it, in which case you get some sort of  
10 activation device from us.

11           Now, without the protections of  
12 1201(a)(1)(A) this would be a very dangerous  
13 exercise to offer this kind of service. I mean,  
14 another example is how Adobe some years ago used to  
15 market an encrypted CD-ROM called "Type On Call."  
16 And we had the whole Adobe library of typefaces, you  
17 know, more than \$10,000 worth of retail value,  
18 hundreds and hundreds of type fonts on an encrypted  
19 CD-ROM.

20           And the idea was if you were a graphic  
21 designer at two in the morning, you're finishing up  
22 some project for your client, and "Oh, damn. I  
23 don't have the font I need." It enabled, in an era  
24 when CD-ROMs were really hot, it enabled you to call

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 an 800 number and get an unlock key for that  
2 particular font that you wanted to buy.

3                   Now, this is in an era before  
4 1201(a)(1)(A). What happened was someone cracked  
5 the encryption on the CD-ROM, and we basically  
6 stopped selling it. And it's a little bit more  
7 complicated than that. There were some other  
8 reasons as to why we stopped marketing it, but  
9 basically we realized that we were, if not naked,  
10 wearing sort of fewer clothes than we would have  
11 wanted legally, out there basically handing out our  
12 products in encrypted form.

13                   And our cause of action in going after  
14 someone that could put a hack up on the matter of  
15 distributed or otherwise, how to get around our  
16 encryption -- I mean, there are a lot of dots to  
17 connect under a contributory infringement theory to  
18 get at stopping that hack. And what 1201(a)(1)(A)  
19 does, it lets us put technologies like that  
20 encrypted CD-ROM back on the market.

21                   So we're excited about the kind of  
22 business models this enables -- and you know, we  
23 think it will be very good for consumers. And,  
24 frankly, we're obviously in business to make -- to  
25 do things good for our customers. And if we, as

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 you've heard in testimony today, make things too  
2 hard for our customers or we're too onerous in our  
3 technological protection measures as to  
4 inconvenience them, they'll go elsewhere. We're  
5 very conscious of that.

6 MR. KASUNIC: Well, I'd say that Section  
7 1201(a)(1) is an effective legal weapon against all  
8 these forms of piracy and the use of passwords and  
9 serial numbers. Assuming, though, that we found  
10 sufficient evidence of adverse effect in some form  
11 of non-infringing in some area of computer program.  
12 How would we define the class of works that we were  
13 going to exempt? Would we just -- would it be  
14 computer programs in general, or would it be  
15 computer programs related to a specific type of use  
16 to -- that would avoid the problem that we -- the  
17 specific problem that we have?

18 MR. SIMON: I think that one would have  
19 to figure out what the harm is to figure out what  
20 the proper remedy is. And for us to ask the  
21 question what the proper remedy is in the absence of  
22 knowing what the harm is, I don't know. I don't  
23 know how to answer that question.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           MR. KASUNIC: All right. So it seems  
2 like there could be, then, some relationship --  
3 rather than have a general --

4           MR. SIMON: There is quite a tradition  
5 in American jurisprudence of tailoring remedies to  
6 harm, isn't there? So it would make sense in this  
7 instance to show us the harm. If you can identify  
8 the harm, you can tailor a response to it. The  
9 notion that somehow, because there's a hypothetical  
10 possibility of some harm, you're going to simply  
11 take all categories of works outside the scope of  
12 this cause of action doesn't make any sense. That  
13 is not just a shotgun, that's a nuclear device in  
14 response to a hypothetical possibility.

15           So the answer to the class question  
16 depends on the harm question. And you first need to  
17 cross the harm threshold before you can get to the  
18 class threshold.

19           MR. KASUNIC: One last thing on the type  
20 of protection measures used. You mentioned serial  
21 numbers, passwords and access codes. We've also had  
22 testimony on one type of protection measure dealing  
23 with hardware locks. And I understand that Adobe  
24 has used those.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           MR. SIMON:  Actually, it's Autodesk that  
2 has used those.  You're talking about dongles?

3           MR. KASUNIC:  Yes.

4           MR. HUGHES:  We also use them, and have  
5 used them in some of our products.

6           MR. KASUNIC:  And what is the specific -  
7 - just to get the other side of the perspective on  
8 this.  What is the purpose of those?  Is that an  
9 access control measure, or a use control measure, or  
10 some combination of the two?

11          MR. HUGHES:  As Adobe has used them, as  
12 I understand them -- I'm not an engineer, but it's  
13 an access control measure.  On very high value  
14 software that our analysis has shown has a very high  
15 likelihood of being pirated, we have gone to the  
16 trouble and expense of engineering a dongle.

17                    Believe me, it's not something that we  
18 do lightly, because it adds to support requirements.  
19 The dongle is expensive.  Dongles, just like  
20 software, get cracked.  You know, you can travel in  
21 the Far East and you can find dongles for sale.  
22 People come up with software patches to go around  
23 the dongles.

24                    Our users very often tend not to like  
25 them much.  It certainly -- if you have a computer

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433   WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701   www.nealrgross.com

1 program that your license may allow you to use on  
2 more than one machine, but not simultaneously, if  
3 you have a dongle -- obviously, you're going to have  
4 to be moving that around from computer to computer.

5                   So, you know, it's not something at  
6 Adobe that we use lightly. And as far as I know  
7 right now, the only major product we use it on is  
8 Adobe After Effects, which is a very high-end  
9 professional film compositing and special effects  
10 program, which sells -- has a retail value of about  
11 \$1,000, but is very pirated.

12                   The other reason we employ dongles is  
13 because, on the access issue we have a real issue  
14 with end-user piracy. You know, the term of art in  
15 the piracy community. Where a company may buy a  
16 couple copies of a given product or license a couple  
17 copies, and then install it on more than one  
18 machine.                   And again, the dongle is an  
19 effective way to enforce the fact that people  
20 actually follow that license provision. But again,  
21 we're conscious of inconveniencing our users, and so  
22 definitively it's a balance.

23                   And I think we trust the market to make  
24 this determination, and I would respectfully submit  
25 that you should too. Because Adobe competes hard

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 with Microsoft, Macromedia, Apple, Corel, a whole  
2 series of cinema-editing type programs. And  
3 shareware and freeware.

4 I mean, one of the most capable  
5 competitors to Photoshop out there is a program on  
6 the Mac platform called "Graphic Converter," which  
7 is a piece of freeware developed by this  
8 enterprising programmer named Thorsten Lemke who  
9 lives in Germany.

10 And so we want to keep Photoshop from  
11 being pirated, definitively. But if we cross the  
12 boundary in terms of user inconvenience, we're very  
13 conscious our customers can go elsewhere.

14 MR. KASUNIC: Thank you. Rachel?

15 MS. GOSLINS: Thank you. Mr. Hughes,  
16 are the trialwares you talked about available now on  
17 the Acrobat, on the Adobe's website?

18 MR. HUGHES: Yes.

19 MS. GOSLINS: And how long have these  
20 been around?

21 MR. HUGHES: I think we at Adobe have  
22 made trialware available for about a year. One past  
23 impediment to doing it is not only, I think, then  
24 the fact that we haven't had the imminent arrival,  
25 we hope, of 1201(a)(1)(A). But also there's just

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 bandwidth considerations on the Internet that our  
2 programs are -- you know, some of them are a  
3 reasonably hefty size. And although, obviously,  
4 perform very sveltely and with a 28.8 modem it's  
5 just not practical for people to download big  
6 programs.

7 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. I'm just confused  
8 by your statement that without 1201(a)(1)(A) making  
9 these kind of technologies available would not have  
10 been possible, when the law hasn't even gone into  
11 effect yet. And you don't know whether it will be  
12 applicable to your products.

13 MR. HUGHES: Well, I'm not sure I said  
14 would not have been possible. If I did I'd like to  
15 amend that. I'd say it's a far more dangerous  
16 enterprise. Because then someone who distributes a  
17 crack that basically disables the expire on the  
18 product and turns it into a fully functional  
19 program, again, I suppose we'd have to use  
20 contributory infringement theory to go after the  
21 distributor of the crack. And also, obviously, we'd  
22 have the license protection as well.

23 But what Congress was getting at with  
24 doing 1201(a)(1)(A), I think was recognizing the  
25 pervasiveness of the problem of piracy on the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Internet, of trying to give us an additional cause  
2 of action to protect our works.

3 MS. GOSLINS: Yes, but don't you have  
4 that cause of action in 1201(b)? You have a cause  
5 of action against anyone who designs, produces or  
6 manufactures devices that are circumventing your  
7 access control protections.

8 MR. SIMON: There are some specific  
9 aspects of the software industry which is that, as  
10 Paul was mentioning -- one of our problems is large  
11 corporate end-user piracy. A company will buy a  
12 single copy of a product, then load it on multiple  
13 machines. In those circumstances we think that we  
14 have a much more powerful cause of action based on  
15 1201(a)(1)(A).

16 MS. GOSLINS: And you also, however,  
17 have the license requirements, correct? The  
18 contractual requirements that come along with the --

19 MR. SIMON: As any good attorney will  
20 tell you, you want as many causes of action as you  
21 can come up with.

22 MS. GOSLINS: I understand that. I'm  
23 just struggling with the idea that any exemption to  
24 1201 would be disastrous to the software industry.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. SIMON: It would be. If you  
2 characterize it as disastrous, I agree.

3                   MS. GOSLINS: Actually, I don't. You  
4 do.

5                   MR. SIMON: I think it would be a  
6 serious problem.

7                   MR. HUGHES: And I would say we already  
8 have a serious problem.

9                   MR. SIMON: You know, the harm for us is  
10 today. We lose billions of dollars to piracy. It's  
11 not a hypothetical possibility, it's an actual harm.  
12 What the Congress determined that this was a remedy  
13 appropriate for that actual harm.

14                   MS. GOSLINS: And Congress also  
15 determined, did it not, that we should do this  
16 rulemaking to see when and if exemptions are  
17 possible or needed to that prohibition?

18                   MR. SIMON: On the presumption the cause  
19 of action would stand, unless there was a  
20 superseding consideration. Which, frankly, I have  
21 not heard any of the testimony coming even close to.

22                   MR. HUGHES: And I would say  
23 particularly in the area of software, where I think  
24 the Congress has addressed -- as we've been  
25 discussing with encryption research and reverse

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 engineering and firewall testing, at least to my  
2 mind, the conceivable kind of fair use reasons you  
3 might need legitimately to circumvent the  
4 technological protections on software.

5 I mean, people -- as Emery and I were  
6 discussing this yesterday -- with a piece of  
7 software I'm not aware of people commonly, or even  
8 needing to excerpt sort of a page -- the way you can  
9 a page of a book, and make fair use of it. I mean,  
10 software's sort of not like that.

11 And technically, you know, it's an all  
12 or nothing proposition with the access controls that  
13 you're doing your rulemaking under.

14 MS. GOSLINS: Emery, you've given us a  
15 lot of examples of what a class of works isn't. I'm  
16 curious as to what you think a class of works is.  
17 Can you give us an example?

18 MR. SIMON: Not independent of a harm.  
19 I think it needs to be decided within the context of  
20 the harm. And I think the notion I was answering to  
21 another question before, which is -- you know, there  
22 is a strong notion in the Copyright Act that  
23 remedies should be commensurate with the harm, with  
24 injuries. You're talking about a remedy, arguably.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 You're talking about curing a potential harm, first  
2 you've got to figure out what the harm is.

3 MS. GOSLINS: I understand that. But  
4 your point being that a class of works is something  
5 smaller than a category, and something bigger than  
6 an individual work. Is there an example of that  
7 middle area that you think you could give us as a  
8 description of a class of work?

9 MR. SIMON: Well, presumably everything  
10 that is smaller than a category and larger than an  
11 individual work is a class.

12 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. You made the  
13 argument, Emery, that we shouldn't be taking into  
14 account chilling effects as something that could be  
15 construed as actual or potential harm. And I guess  
16 I just want to know why.

17 If we assume for a moment, for purposes  
18 of this question, that we have demonstrated to us  
19 that if the presence or the threat of prosecution  
20 under 1201(a)(1)(A) is deterring people from making  
21 legitimate non-infringing uses, why wouldn't that be  
22 a harm caused by the statute?

23 MR. SIMON: No, actually I was quite  
24 precise on that point. Which is that I don't think  
25 a chilling effect should be a dispositive

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 determination. Because, frankly, chilling effects  
2 are really easy to find in virtually any context.

3 So it's not -- I mean, a mere chilling  
4 effect, a mere cause of my being adverse to doing  
5 something is not what the statute requires.

6 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. So I just want to  
7 make sure I understand your testimony. You can look  
8 at chilling effects, it's just not determinative or  
9 the end of the -- shouldn't be the end of the --

10 MR. SIMON: No, the statute speaks  
11 specifically about the effect you have to look for,  
12 right? It talks about adverse effect.

13 MS. GOSLINS: And is your testimony,  
14 then, if we had proof that people were deterred from  
15 making legitimate uses because of the presence of  
16 1201, wouldn't that be an adverse effect, or would  
17 that not be an adverse effect?

18 MR. SIMON: Making legitimate uses.  
19 What's a legitimate use? You mean, non-infringing  
20 uses? You mean deterred from licensing their  
21 products? That's a non-infringing use.

22 So if it would prevent Adobe from  
23 licensing its products, would that be a chilling  
24 effect? Yes, it could be. If it would prevent the  
25 North Carolina Law Library from buying, you know, a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 product from Symantec. Would that be a chilling  
2 effect? It could be. It's very hard --

3 MS. GOSLINS: And is that something we  
4 should take into account in our determination of  
5 whether we've seen a demonstration of actual and  
6 potential harm?

7 MR. SIMON: Sure. But that's the kind  
8 of testimony you've been hearing. And I am simply  
9 positing to you, find harm and find adverse effect.  
10 That's what the statute asks you to look for. It  
11 does not ask you -- and I apologize for coming back  
12 to what I was raising before. Resist temptation.

13 The statute does not require you to  
14 create exemptions. It requires you to find harm.  
15 If you don't find a harm, the statute says don't do  
16 anything. And until somebody actually shows real  
17 harm, there's no basis for action here.

18 MS. GOSLINS: I understand that. But  
19 what I'm asking is do you think a chilling effect,  
20 assuming it was shown, should be included in our  
21 determination of whether there's harm or not?

22 MR. SIMON: Give me a specific example.  
23 I can't give you a hypothetical answer to that  
24 question because anything can constitute a chilling  
25 effect. It can be a de minimis chilling effect, or

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 it can be an enormous chilling effect on free  
2 speech. It can be -- not that free speech chilling  
3 effects are relevant to this, but it can be an  
4 enormous public interest chilling effect. And you  
5 were quite right in pointing out before that it's  
6 the public interest we're looking at here.

7 So I don't know, which chilling effect?  
8 If chilling effect as a concept?

9 MS. GOSLINS: Looking at the statute for  
10 a moment, as you read the statute, assuming for a  
11 moment that we do find a class of works which we  
12 recommend to be exempted from the anticircumvention  
13 prohibition, then what happens? Is all uses of that  
14 -- are all uses of that class of works then exempted  
15 from the prohibition, or only non-infringing uses?

16 MR. SIMON: Well, it can't be all uses.  
17 Because then we're authorizing infringement.

18 MR. CARSON: No, you're authorizing  
19 circumvention at most. You're permitting  
20 circumvention.

21 MS. GOSLINS: You can still prosecute  
22 them for infringement, presumably. If they then  
23 circumvent access control protection and infringed  
24 your copyright.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. SIMON:  Then I guess I don't  
2 understand your question.

3                   MS. GOSLINS:  Okay.  Let's assume we  
4 find a class of works of that is exempted, and the  
5 Librarian recommends it to Congress and that class  
6 of works is then listed under (a)(1)(A)(C).  From  
7 that point, under your reading of the statute, are  
8 all uses of that class of works exempted, or only  
9 non-infringing uses?

10                  MS. PETERS:  Or can you basically  
11 circumvent the access control for all classes?

12                  MR. CARSON:  For all uses.

13                  MS. PETERS:  Yes.  Can everybody  
14 circumvent for all -- if I'm an individual, can I  
15 just circumvent it, period?  Because it's one of  
16 those classes.

17                  MR. SIMON:  That can't make sense.  That  
18 can't be right.

19                  MS. GOSLINS:  Okay.  So how does the  
20 statute work?  We find a class of works that is  
21 unattached to any kind of use or users.  And let us  
22 just make up a class of works, whether or not --  
23 computer games.

24                  MR. SIMON:  Let's do chemistry  
25 textbooks.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433   WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701   www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. GOSLINS: Okay, chemistry textbooks.  
2 And we identify that as a class of works. From that  
3 point, is your reading of 1201 that anybody can then  
4 circumvent access control protections on chemistry  
5 textbooks? Or only people who are then going to  
6 make non-infringing uses of them?

7 MR. SIMON: It's got to be the latter.

8 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. And where do you  
9 find the authority for that in the statute?

10 MR. SIMON: Well, that's what (d) says.

11 MS. GOSLINS: Great. Okay.

12 MR. CARSON: Can we just -- does anyone  
13 have a different view on that?

14 MS. GOSLINS: Sorry, I just didn't ask -  
15 - I didn't think you'd want to get into that.

16 (Laughter.)

17 MR. CARSON: No, I've just been enjoying  
18 -- do you want to address that issue, Rick or Paul?

19 MR. WEINGARTEN: I've not been -- I have  
20 nothing to add to that. We probably will in our  
21 reply comments.

22 MS. GOSLINS: All right. I just have  
23 one last question for Mr. Hughes, and then a couple  
24 questions for you, Mr. Weingarten. Sorry, I know  
25 we're getting close to our lunch hour.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   Mr. Hughes, you made the argument that  
2 we've heard from a number of content owners, that  
3 basically a common sense argument that, "Look, we  
4 have to serve our consumers. So we're not going to  
5 do anything that would make our product less  
6 competitive." But isn't that an argument for  
7 accommodating, by law and in proceedings such as  
8 this one, sections of the user populace that are not  
9 protected by the market?

10                   Traditionally non-commercial users like  
11 universities or libraries, who -- obviously, they  
12 constitute their own market, academic markets. But  
13 for a majority of the commercially produced products  
14 aren't the same as the average consumer that you are  
15 aiming your products to. And indeed, often need  
16 different kinds of licenses and different kinds of  
17 contracts to accommodate the different kinds of uses  
18 that they put their products to, put your products  
19 to.

20                   MR. HUGHES: Ms. Goslins, well, firstly  
21 I guess I should say I'm not an attorney. So if I  
22 gave a sort of common sense approach to it, that's  
23 what I fall back on. It's my years in the foreign  
24 service.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   But I almost think you answered the -- I  
2 would almost submit that you answered your own  
3 question at the very end. I mean, for us and for  
4 software companies, educators, libraries, schools,  
5 these are actually important commercial markets.  
6 And thanks to our freedom to offer licenses, we're  
7 in fact able to offer special educational products,  
8 special educational prices, special educational  
9 terms.

10                   In fact, we heard testimony yesterday  
11 from one of the people on the library side just  
12 sometimes how long these negotiations are that are  
13 engaged in. Six months, nine months. But I would  
14 say there's no contradiction here. That from  
15 Adobe's perspective, we want to see as many people  
16 as we can using our products in a way that, frankly,  
17 maximizes our revenue and our return for our  
18 shareholders.

19                   And if there's an educational market to  
20 be served, gosh darn it, we'll go after them and do  
21 our best to reach a deal that serves both our  
22 interests. I'm afraid that's as well as I can  
23 answer your question.

24                   MS. GOSLINS: Does anybody else have any  
25 comments on that? Okay. Mr. Weingarten, I was

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 unclear at the end of the testimony what exactly you  
2 would like us to do. Are there specific classes of  
3 works you are suggesting that we examine? And if  
4 so, what are they?

5 MR. WEINGARTEN: Well, I mean, I think  
6 the libraries over the course of this hearing, and  
7 in our comments, have expressed what we want to do.  
8 I understand that there's a profound difference of  
9 opinion about how class can be interpreted. We want  
10 a broad exemption for non-infringing use for  
11 lawfully acquired works. We don't think that's a  
12 troublesome thing to understand, or interpret, as  
13 has been suggested by some people.

14 We think it's fairly clear. Whether it  
15 is within the scope of this rulemaking is a matter  
16 of legal debate. And you've heard from Arnie and  
17 Julie and Peter, who've suggested it certainly is.  
18 And you've heard from other people citing their  
19 authority saying it isn't. And I really don't know  
20 what I can add to that.

21 Libraries simply do not -- libraries  
22 serve an incredible diversity of needs. And on top  
23 of that, more and more works that we deal with,  
24 digital works, are multimedia. I don't even know,  
25 frankly, that categories is going to be much longer

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 within the law a very useful set of determinations.  
2 Because things are sliding around, back and forth.

3           So to talk about classes now as a  
4 subdivision of categories is -- it seems to me just  
5 perpetrates an archaic view of the way the whole  
6 information marketplace is evolving. And that is  
7 changing rapidly in Internet time the last two years  
8 since the bill was passed. It's been several years  
9 of Internet time.

10           So, I mean, I think for all of these  
11 reasons that you are empowered and ought to consider  
12 a broad exemption. And repeating that we are not  
13 interested in a broad exemption that essentially  
14 legitimizes widespread piracy. We're looking for  
15 non-infringing uses.

16           And I think that that would be the  
17 appropriate statement for the Librarian to make.

18           MS. GOSLINS: Okay. I just have one  
19 last question. In your testimony you cite some  
20 quotes from different publishers and content  
21 producers about where they think their practice is  
22 going. One of them was from a firm who had  
23 developed a way for publishers to receive revenue  
24 from individual titles. And it says, "Older titles  
25 and out of print books that have been read and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 studied thousands of times over the years in  
2 libraries, and yet have not generated new income  
3 will now produce new revenues."

4 I guess my question to you is why should  
5 that bother us? If we assume that they are still  
6 available in all of those libraries, and that what  
7 you are getting is a new kind of access that you  
8 would not have had prior to this, why shouldn't you  
9 pay for that?

10 MR. WEINGARTEN: Well, in fact, it seems  
11 to me it's not positing a new form of access. It's  
12 positing a new revenue stream for access that people  
13 have had for many years.

14 MS. GOSLINS: But you still have that  
15 access from the library books on the shelves that  
16 you could use and study thousands of times without  
17 any revenue, right? It's just you're getting an  
18 increased access and convenience and speed by  
19 getting it digitally.

20 MR. WEINGARTEN: There's a basic trend,  
21 of course, to digitizing works. Libraries have  
22 limited shelf space, and as we move into the future  
23 we're going to be basically shelving, in some sense  
24 -- whatever that word means -- digital works.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   Yes, there is still this question which  
2 has come up. You're sort of indirectly going to  
3 that question, "Well, if there's print versions  
4 what's the matter with this model for digital?"  
5 There's a lot wrong with it, particularly in areas  
6 of educational research.

7                   Karen yesterday talked about whole new  
8 modes of research that are based on digital access  
9 to information. We as a nation are busily trying to  
10 modernize our schools and our whole education system  
11 to use digital products. We're moving towards  
12 distance learning models in which students access  
13 information and scholars access information  
14 remotely. They can't do it from the shelves.

15                   So there is not an equivalent here  
16 between the digital and the paper version. But the  
17 other part of that quote, or the other reason I put  
18 that quote in there is that it illustrates who we  
19 are striking at the very heart of what libraries do.  
20 I mean, libraries have always bought books. We  
21 spend over \$2 billion a year in the information  
22 marketplace.

23                   We don't steal this stuff. We don't  
24 break into bookstores, we buy it. And then it's  
25 there, it's there for people to use. And you know,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 somehow the presumption of saying, "Well, now  
2 publishers can go back in and start recapturing  
3 funds for every time a student pulls that book off  
4 the shelf."

5 MS. GOSLINS: But they're not making you  
6 take the books off the shelf.

7 MR. WEINGARTEN: No, they're not making  
8 us take the books off the shelf. These are -- this  
9 is a vision for the future. But it is a -- it's a  
10 vision that strikes at the very heart of what we do.

11 MS. PETERS: Can I ask one other  
12 question that's very related to this? Which really  
13 has to do with the -- in the Digital Millennium  
14 Copyright Act there was an updating of Section 108.  
15 And with respect to a work, a published work that a  
16 library owns that is deteriorating or damaged, a  
17 library now does have the ability to basically make  
18 a digital copy of that work.

19 MR. WEINGARTEN: Right.

20 MS. PETERS: Doesn't that in some way  
21 answer your question?

22 MR. WEINGARTEN: Well, it may be. And  
23 if so, then there's -- this group won't have any  
24 market. But I don't think so. The new products --

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MS. PETERS: Well, it will get to --  
2 what it may get to is the new product may have  
3 search and retrieval capabilities that are enhanced,  
4 that value-added as opposed to what a library may  
5 do. Which is more like a plain vanilla type  
6 digitization effort.

7 And if that's true, you know, I would  
8 say that the access to the information is still  
9 there in the plain vanilla version.

10 MR. WEINGARTEN: It may be. And what I  
11 said at the conclusion of my testimony is that we  
12 want to be engaged in a discussion with these  
13 entrepreneurs to see that, both what we do as  
14 libraries and educators, and what they do in terms  
15 of their markets converge. There's no reason why it  
16 can't converge.

17 But these visions of sort of, "Well, now  
18 we can charge for every time a student turns a page,  
19 or accesses an old out of print book," is -- I think  
20 strikes at the heart of education. And yet it need  
21 not. We can, I think, find some way out of it. But  
22 I guarantee we're not going to find some way of out  
23 it on the floor of Congress, or even within the  
24 Beltway.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MS. PETERS: But we're looking at the  
2 adverse effect today, and the adverse effect or  
3 potential adverse effect in the next three years.  
4 Based on what I'm hearing you say, we don't have  
5 that now.

6 MR. WEINGARTEN: We don't have that now.  
7 And that may be -- if I could address that point a  
8 bit.

9 One, we believe that an exemption done  
10 ahead of time serves as a message to the marketplace  
11 to develop what I refer to as fair use friendlier,  
12 fair use soft technology controls. Or at least pay  
13 more attention.

14 I would agree, Adobe undoubtedly finds  
15 the academic marketplace a very attractive one, an  
16 interesting one, and they always have. The kinds of  
17 products they produce are tuned to that.

18 But I would refer back to the testimony  
19 of the recording industry association -- and I'm  
20 just paraphrasing it now, because I don't have it in  
21 front of me -- when you asked, "Well, when are you  
22 going to have a library friendly version of a DVD  
23 music disk?" The answer was, "Oh, 10 or 20 years.  
24 This is not a very important marketplace for us."

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   And I would submit that that -- it's  
2 that kind of attitude that we need to -- that we  
3 don't trust the marketplace independent of an  
4 exemption to address. We're always willing to open  
5 discussions with these people, and to possibly even  
6 help them find new ways to market their goods.

7                   MS. PETERS: I think fear and lack of  
8 trust have a certain role in all of this. Anyway,  
9 Rachel?

10                  MS. GOSLINS: I'm done. Thank you.

11                  MS. PETERS: David?

12                  MR. CARSON: Emery, in your testimony  
13 you discussed the assertion that there should be an  
14 exemption for works with respect to which initial  
15 lawful use has been permitted. Is that accurate?

16                  MR. SIMON: Initial lawful access.

17                  MR. CARSON: Initial lawful access,  
18 okay. And you said Congress specifically decided  
19 not to do that. Can you sort of walk us through how  
20 that decision came about, or what the manifestations  
21 of that conscious decision by Congress?

22                  MR. SIMON: There were a series of  
23 amendments that were offered first in the House  
24 Judiciary Committee, Subcommittee on Courts and  
25 Intellectual Property, which considered the bill

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 first. As I recall, Mrs. Lofgren, whose district  
2 we're actually in, proposed such an amendment, as  
3 did Mr. Boucher of Virginia.

4                   And the objective of those amendments --  
5 and I forget the exact wording of them -- was very  
6 much that. Which is that if you have acquired  
7 lawful access to a work, thereafter you may make  
8 fair use uses of that work without requiring further  
9 permission. And you may circumvent to be able to  
10 achieve those ends.

11                   And the House Judiciary Committee,  
12 Subcommittee in the first instance rejected that.  
13 That amendment was a threat -- or a variant of that  
14 amendment, but you probably remember this better  
15 than I do. Was then considered in the Commerce  
16 Committee as well.

17                   And I recall Mr. Boucher offering that  
18 in the Commerce Committee, and I recall he actually  
19 withdrew it before it came to a vote. There was a  
20 discussion of it, and then he withdrew his  
21 amendment. That's my best recollection. I  
22 apologize for it being sketchy, but I'm getting old.

23                   MR. CARSON: Anyone have any further  
24 recollection to add to that? Emery and Paul, I  
25 guess I'd like your reaction to an example I think

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Rick gave. If I, on November 1st of this year, if I  
2 gave Rachel my Lexis password and she accessed Lexis  
3 using that password, would she be in violation of  
4 1201(a)?

5 MR. SIMON: Yes.

6 MR. CARSON: Do you agree, Paul?

7 MR. HUGHES: Gosh, it's not Adobe's  
8 business right now. But it's always my business to  
9 agree with Emery.

10 MR. CARSON: I think I'm going to have  
11 to revisit the question of reverse engineering with  
12 you for a moment.

13 MR. SIMON: And you'll get a very  
14 creative answers. Responsive answers.

15 MR. CARSON: I want to go back to your  
16 last exchange with Rob, because I think you may have  
17 admitted something to him. But I'm not sure. I  
18 just want to get clarification here.

19 At the end of that discussion did you  
20 essentially admit to Rob that if we were to include  
21 now, or in three years, or in six years perhaps that  
22 anticircumvention measures are preventing users from  
23 engaging in lawful reverse engineering, that does  
24 not fall within Section 1201(f)? The Librarian  
25 would have the power under 1201(a)(1)(A) to create

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 an exemption that would permit circumvention in  
2 order to engage in such reverse engineering?

3 MR. SIMON: I think you have to go back  
4 to what the statute permits you to do through  
5 rulemaking. Which is your statutory authority under  
6 rulemaking is not to make the rule conform to  
7 whatever court decisions there may be. I think your  
8 statutory authority under rulemaking is to find what  
9 the statute tells you to find, adverse effect.

10 And that may be found if there are court  
11 decisions that have come through time which then  
12 cause you to think about those adverse effects. It  
13 may not. It is not, as a matter of first instance,  
14 your duty to say, "A court opinion and adverse  
15 effect are synonymous."

16 MR. CARSON: Okay. I follow all that.  
17 But the reason I'm asking this question is, I think  
18 in your testimony you were saying something that  
19 came close to saying that Section 1201(f) more or  
20 less preempts the field with respect to reverse  
21 engineering. And that in the 1201(a)(1)(A) process,  
22 the Librarian is powerless to do anything in the  
23 field of reverse engineering.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   Maybe you weren't really saying that.  
2 Because I think what you've just said is  
3 inconsistent with that.

4                   MR. SIMON: Well, let me be quite  
5 specific. I think whatever the latitude of the  
6 Librarian may be in certain areas, the latitude of  
7 the Librarian is substantially diminished in those  
8 areas where specific issues have been addressed by  
9 the Congress. And those are the exceptions that run  
10 starting with additional violations.

11                   I'm sorry, not with C but D. Where  
12 exceptions for nonprofit libraries, archives and  
13 educational institutions already speaks in some  
14 respects to that. It speaks to law enforcement,  
15 intelligence and other government activities. It  
16 speaks to reverse engineering, it speaks to  
17 encryption research, it speaks to exceptions  
18 regarding minors.

19                   There are a whole variety of areas where  
20 there was a specific congressional examination.  
21 This is not a de novo review of these issues by the  
22 Librarian. The Librarian was not asked to do that,  
23 the Librarian was asked to look at areas where there  
24 are problems.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   And I think that in the areas where the  
2 Congress has spoken specifically to what the  
3 appropriate exceptions are, the latitude and the  
4 discretion of the Librarian was substantially  
5 diminished. Would I say to you that the Librarian  
6 has zero latitude in those areas? I think that  
7 would be a ridiculous statement.

8                   But is it much less? I think the answer  
9 has to be yes. Because otherwise these other  
10 exceptions would be meaningless.

11                   MR. CARSON: Okay. I follow what you're  
12 saying. This may not be the right group of people  
13 to ask the question to, but since we're talking  
14 about reverse engineering maybe someone can clarify  
15 for me. Are there circumstances where, in order to  
16 reverse engineer -- and let's assume it's a  
17 legitimate need to reverse engineer -- you really  
18 would have to circumvent access control measures.  
19 Why would that be a requirement in order to reverse  
20 engineer?

21                   MR. SIMON: I mean, I'm not an engineer  
22 but I can tell you what the engineers tell me. What  
23 you are -- the permitted act or acts of reverse  
24 engineering under the statute are done for the  
25 purpose of achieving interoperability.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Interoperability is defined in the statute  
2 essentially as an exchange of information between  
3 either two software products, or software and a  
4 hardware product.

5           The points where that information or  
6 exchange occurs may be parts of subroutines, and  
7 there may be second-level technological protection  
8 measures that are applied with a computer program.  
9 There may be a general access control that's applied  
10 to the work as a whole, and any second-level  
11 protection that's applied to particular --

12           MR. CARSON: All right. I see where  
13 you're going. Okay.

14           MR. SIMON: That is, in fact, the reason  
15 why Section 1201(f) is there.

16           MR. CARSON: All right.

17           MR. HUGHES: Mr. Carson?

18           MR. CARSON: Yes.

19           MR. HUGHES: If I could I wondered if I  
20 could just return to the first question you asked on  
21 the Lexis/Nexis passwords. I actually didn't want  
22 to leave the impression I was lukewarm in my  
23 endorsement of Emery's answer.

24           (Laughter.)

25           MR. SIMON: Won't be the first time.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. HUGHES:  And it's not just because  
2 he'll kick me under the table, which you would see.  
3 But in all seriousness, Adobe in fact is  
4 increasingly in this business, and software  
5 companies are.  And it's not access to databases,  
6 but it's what we call -- it's access to programs, as  
7 Emery discussed earlier, that are hosted on the  
8 Internet.

9                   And in fact Adobe has a service right  
10 now where you can basically lease access to a PDF  
11 Creation tool on the web.  You can basically go to a  
12 website, you've got a Microsoft Word document.  
13 Let's say you want to make it PDF.  For \$10 a month  
14 you can get unlimited access to this ability to  
15 upload a file.  It will be crunched on our servers  
16 into a PDF and you'll get it back.

17                   Now, clearly, it seems to me, that the  
18 dissemination of my password if I posted it on the  
19 Internet to allow sort of everyone in the world  
20 using my password to use this service -- and the  
21 password is an access control measure, that's why we  
22 have it there -- I, by posting the password with  
23 that intent would be circumventing the access  
24 control.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433   WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701   www.nealrgross.com

1                   So my answer to your question is yes,  
2 and a very firm yes.

3                   MR. CARSON: Okay. We heard Paul talk  
4 about trialware. And I think he explained it pretty  
5 clearly to me. Is it pretty clear to you what  
6 trialware is?

7                   MR. WEINGARTEN: Pardon?

8                   MR. CARSON: Trialware?

9                   MR. WEINGARTEN: Trialware, yes.

10                  MR. CARSON: Okay. Let's take a case  
11 where someone gets access to trialware under those  
12 terms that are associated with it. And maybe have  
13 access for 30 days, and on the 31st day you can no  
14 longer use it. Would it be your position, in  
15 connection with the notion that once you've lawfully  
16 acquired possession or use of a work you should be  
17 able to circumvent, would it be your position that  
18 on that 31st day or the 31st month thereafter one  
19 should be able to circumvent in order to gain access  
20 to the computer program that you first obtained  
21 access to as trialware?

22                  MR. WEINGARTEN: No. And I think Lolly,  
23 in fact, addressed this question yesterday. That if  
24 you have access to a toolwork for a specific period  
25 of time, and that's the agreement you entered into

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 when you got the work, on the 31st day you don't  
2 have lawful access to the work. And I think that's  
3 perfectly fair.

4 We are not interested in a license to  
5 hack or steal, or circumvent license terms.

6 MR. CARSON: And yet you do say that  
7 your concerned, as a general proposition, about the  
8 notion that a content provider can use access  
9 control measures to enforce licensing terms. I  
10 mean, this is a licensing term, isn't it?

11 MR. WEINGARTEN: Right.

12 MR. CARSON: So which licensing terms  
13 are you concerned about, and which are you not  
14 concerned about? And how does one draw the line?

15 MR. WEINGARTEN: I'm not concerned about  
16 you addressing any specific licensing term, I'm  
17 concerned about using 1201 in conjunction with  
18 technological measures to add the force of federal  
19 criminal law on users. On the user's side of a  
20 license. That's what I'm objecting to.

21 MR. CARSON: All right. Let me see if I  
22 understand what you're saying, then. Going back to  
23 the trialware example, you would object to the use  
24 of Section 1201 to create civil liability or  
25 criminal liability with respect to a person who, on

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 that 31st day or the 31st month, circumvents in  
2 order to use the trialware, is that what you're  
3 saying?

4 MR. WEINGARTEN: Probably not. Because  
5 we established that the circumvention would not be a  
6 non-infringing use.

7 MR. CARSON: We've established that?

8 MR. WEINGARTEN: Didn't we? Well, I  
9 mean --

10 MR. CARSON: That wasn't part of my  
11 hypothetical.

12 MR. WEINGARTEN: I mean, you asked me if  
13 I would want the exemption to include that, and I  
14 said no. Because the work was no longer lawfully  
15 acquired.

16 MR. CARSON: Okay. But what I think I'm  
17 hearing you say -- and maybe I'm not hearing it  
18 clearly enough -- is that licensing terms, okay,  
19 fine. Licensing terms are what they are, and people  
20 perhaps should abide by them.

21 MR. WEINGARTEN: Right.

22 MR. CARSON: But as a general  
23 proposition one shouldn't be able to use Section  
24 1201 to create civil or criminal liability for

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 circumventing technological access control measures  
2 designed to enforce the licensing terms.

3 MR. WEINGARTEN: Right.

4 MR. CARSON: But then again, I think  
5 you've just told me that there's one exception at  
6 least, and that's the trialware exception. Where  
7 it's okay to use Section 1201 to prevent someone  
8 from accessing that trialware way down the road, or  
9 are you not saying that?

10 MR. WEINGARTEN: If I'm no longer in  
11 legal possession of it. I mean, I'm not in  
12 violation of the license. If I still have that  
13 stuff after the expiration of the license, I'm not  
14 under license. So, you know, I'm having trouble --  
15 let's posit that there's some way that, say the  
16 trialware has limited capabilities. Some trialware  
17 does operate that way.

18 I don't know, it's hard because programs  
19 are not exactly what libraries exercise fair use.  
20 So suppose it was a trial work, and it had limited  
21 capabilities, and we circumvented to make a non-  
22 infringing use of it during the period of time that  
23 we legitimately had access to it as a trial work.

24 If we violate the contract, the license,  
25 the publisher, content provider is perfectly right

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 to go after in a breach of contract or some such  
2 cause. I do not want 1201 to make a felony out of  
3 that.

4 After the term of agreement is over, and  
5 I no longer have legal access, I'm not under the  
6 contract. We're not talking about a violation of  
7 contract. I don't have lawful access, and it  
8 doesn't fall under the exemption that we're seeking.

9 MR. CARSON: All right. Let's take a  
10 different contractual term. Let's say we have a  
11 contractual term that says only one person may gain  
12 access to that particular work at a time. And you  
13 decide, "This is silly. I've got three people in  
14 the library who want to use it right now. Why  
15 shouldn't they be able to use it? They're using it  
16 for research, that's fair use. So I think I should  
17 be able to circumvent," not withstanding the fact  
18 that there's a contractual term limiting access to  
19 one person.

20 Would it be your position that Section  
21 1201 should not be operative, and you should be able  
22 to circumvent to let three people use it at a time?

23 MR. WEINGARTEN: Those are two separate  
24 things. One, yes, it's my position that 1201 should  
25 not be operative, that it's breach of contract. I'm

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 not saying people should do it. I'm not saying  
2 people should violate their contract terms, I'm  
3 saying I don't want the weight of federal criminal  
4 law sitting on the users, when if the content  
5 provider violates terms of the contract it's just  
6 breach of contract and so sue me. I want an equal  
7 playing field. And it licenses what I wanted  
8 resolved under is contract law, not federal  
9 copyright law.

10 MR. CARSON: Except when the contractual  
11 term is a term -- it has to do with the period of  
12 time in which you can use it. I gather you're  
13 saying there's an exception. And if the contract  
14 says you could only use it for a month --

15 MR. WEINGARTEN: No. It's not  
16 exception. I'm not under the contract at the  
17 expiration of the month.

18 MR. CARSON: But you are under the  
19 contract when you're letting three people use it,  
20 even though the contract permits only one person to  
21 use it?

22 MR. WEINGARTEN: Yes, that's a violation  
23 of contract.

24 MS. PETERS: But this is exactly the  
25 end-user argument that I think you were making.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. SIMON: Well, I mean, this is a huge  
2 issue for us. And it's a huge issue for us on two  
3 different grounds. One is we do side licensing.  
4 And we will side license to Stanford University a  
5 copy of "Photoshop" for 100 users. And then you  
6 have 15,000 students using it. That's clearly a  
7 breach of contract. No problem.

8                   Now, the question becomes one -- but it  
9 was educational, it was fair use. Is that a defense  
10 of breach of contract? Well, I see Lolly shaking  
11 her head. But I apologize, Lolly, the American  
12 Library Association's been taking the position in  
13 the course of enacting the UCITA that that should be  
14 a defense to breach of contract. That's an  
15 untenable position as well.

16                   So Rachel was asking me before a  
17 question about various causes of action. So now  
18 we're back to a situation where we have these 15,000  
19 infringers as well as circumventurists at Stanford  
20 University. We need both causes of action because  
21 while you say with certainty that, "Oh, this should  
22 be done under contract theories," it's not clear  
23 that we would win under those contract theories in  
24 every instance.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    www.nealrgross.com

1                   We still have infringement, we still  
2 have harm being done to us, we still have wrongs  
3 being done. And what you're suggesting is -- I  
4 think what you're ultimately coming down to is  
5 you're afraid of the criminal liability.

6                   MR. WEINGARTEN: If it's infringement,  
7 if it's an infringement you have just as much cause  
8 of action under 1201. I'm looking for non-  
9 infringing uses. I don't see any difference here.

10                  MR. SIMON: I mean, I guess --

11                  MR. WEINGARTEN: I'm not trying to argue  
12 with a lawyer.

13                  MS. PETERS: No, I know. But it's an  
14 important point. Because the criminal is willful  
15 for commercial purposes or private gain, and yet in  
16 the context that you're using with your Stanford  
17 case, there should have been a license for 15,000  
18 students, correct?

19                  MR. SIMON: Yes. Now, is that willful,  
20 is that for commercial gain? Well, the way the  
21 statute actually now reads, it's not direct  
22 commercial gain, it's actually loss or revenue  
23 counts as well.

24                  So, yes, I think -- but, look.  
25 Ultimately the reality is -- and I can't speak for

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 other industries, but from a software industry  
2 perspective, we're really not interested in putting  
3 Stanford University in jail. What we're interested  
4 in doing is selling them 15,000 copies of  
5 "Photoshop."

6 That's what we want to do, sell -- you  
7 know, we want the criminal sanctions there because  
8 we think they create an effective deterrent. But  
9 the reality is we want to sell product. That's what  
10 we want to do. And suggesting somehow that a  
11 contract-based cause of action alone, given the  
12 realities we're confronting in the marketplace right  
13 now is sufficient, is just not true.

14 Now, maybe libraries and educators are  
15 nicer than most people. Well, they're certainly  
16 better looking. And it may be easier to deal with  
17 nice people, but the problem is there's no real way  
18 to parse this law between nice users and bad users.  
19 You guys kept on asking me, "Tell me who a user is."

20 Well, can you parse it by nice users and  
21 un-nice users? You can't. You can't do these kinds  
22 of things that easily. It's all context specific.

23 MR. CARSON: Well, when we're talking  
24 about criminal liability, you can parse the law with  
25 respect to certain kinds of users who simply -- you

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 can't have criminal liability with. 1204(d) exempts  
2 libraries, nonprofit libraries and educational  
3 institutions, for example.

4 MR. SIMON: Correct. But again, those  
5 are not issues for this rulemaking, those are issues  
6 of the operation of law.

7 MS. GOSLINS: Absolutely.

8 MR. CARSON: Rick, I think most of the  
9 testimony we've heard from other representatives of  
10 libraries -- and I'm not sure, you said it seems to  
11 be implicit, but let me clarify it first. The types  
12 of technological measures, access control measures  
13 you're concerned with so far seem to be access  
14 control measures that are enforcing contractual or  
15 licensing terms. Is that, as a general proposition,  
16 the case?

17 When you run into those technological  
18 measures, or when you run into those licensing  
19 terms, that the licensee had the opportunity in  
20 exchange for, perhaps, a payment of more money to  
21 get licensing terms that would have permitted the  
22 very act that you're trying to circumvent in order  
23 to be able to do it.

24 MR. WEINGARTEN: There's probably no  
25 single answer to that. I mean, I'm not a working

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 librarian and so I don't know. But you've heard  
2 from Karen yesterday that there are times when she  
3 has to negotiate for a year or more in order to get  
4 terms she needs. And she has told me, so I guess  
5 this is secondhand, she's told me that there's  
6 simply been times when she has not been able to  
7 mount products because she couldn't get the terms.

8                   But there are two other issues. One is  
9 that the technological controls become embedded in  
10 the product itself, and are part of the product.  
11 You really can't -- it's no longer negotiable. And  
12 we think that this is going to be, these licenses  
13 are going to be less and less negotiable for these  
14 sorts of terms.

15                   There are, of course, products, an  
16 increasing number of products that come with click-  
17 on or shrink-wrap licenses where there's no  
18 negotiation whatsoever, we mentioned UCITA which  
19 covers those sorts of products. So I don't think  
20 there's any single answer.

21                   Yes, if it's a question of, "Well, we'd  
22 like three students or three users instead of one  
23 user to use it," I'm sure that the provider is  
24 perfectly willing to say, "Well, okay. That will  
25 cost you this much." Or, "We would like this much

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 stuff on it, or like the ability to print out of  
2 it," or whatever. There are negotiable prices in  
3 some cases. But certainly not in all.

4 MR. CARSON: Well, let's take a case  
5 like that, where, in fact, the provider is perfectly  
6 willing to license you to let three people use it  
7 rather than one. But you decide you don't want to  
8 pay that price. You'll just take the license for  
9 one, and if we want three people to do it we'll  
10 circumvent.

11 If that case were to arise and that was  
12 the choice you made, would it be your position that  
13 even though you had the opportunity to negotiate a  
14 deal that would give you the right for access for  
15 three users, you should be able to circumvent with  
16 impunity?

17 MR. WEINGARTEN: Certainly not.

18 MR. CARSON: Okay. 1201 should be able  
19 to -- should be operative in that case, then?

20 MR. WEINGARTEN: No.

21 MR. CARSON: No?

22 MR. WEINGARTEN: No. That contract law  
23 should be operative, not 1201.

24 MR. CARSON: And why not 1201?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           MR. WEINGARTEN: Well, if a court were  
2 to determine -- no, I'll take that back. I was too  
3 quick on that. That if you violated the terms of  
4 the -- one, if you violated the terms of the  
5 contract, that's contract law. If somebody took  
6 action under 1201 against you, or against the user,  
7 and the court determined that it was not a fair use  
8 under whatever theory of argument, then 1201 would  
9 apply.

10           If the court said, "Well, you may have  
11 violated the contract, but it was a fair use under  
12 copyright law, 1201 does not apply, although you  
13 still may be in breach of contract." I mean, people  
14 give up their fair use rights in contract all the  
15 time. It's various kinds of rights for various  
16 purposes, and that's their right, as I said, as  
17 consenting adults, to do so. And we do not  
18 recommend that they be scofflaws, or violate their  
19 contract.

20           MS. PETERS: Well, I just want to take  
21 over. If a library today buys a book, only one  
22 person at a time can use that book, right?

23           MR. WEINGARTEN: For the most part, yes.

24           MS. PETERS: So if, when you now are  
25 buying a package you have a choice with regard to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the simultaneous accesses that you're going to  
2 provide, which really you're substituting for, in  
3 essence, the number of books that you would have on  
4 the shelves so you could serve so many people at a  
5 time.

6 So I guess I have a hard time figuring  
7 out why that rises to the level of a fair use.

8 MR. WEINGARTEN: I didn't say it. I  
9 don't think I said it did. I think I said -- I just  
10 said if a court decides it didn't. And the court,  
11 you're right, the court may well decide that that's  
12 not fair use.

13 MS. PETERS: Okay. Do any of you have  
14 anything else that you'd like to add at this point?  
15 Does anyone else have any questions?

16 (No response.)

17 MS. PETERS: All right. What are we  
18 going to do this afternoon? First of all, before I  
19 get there, I want to thank the witnesses. They were  
20 extremely helpful, and I really do appreciate your  
21 testimony and appearing here.

22 Second, we don't know whether or not we  
23 will have Mr. Metalitz this afternoon, but we do  
24 know that we will have people who can appear earlier  
25 than the two o'clock. Because of the time frame,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 what we're going to suggest is that we start at  
2 1:30. Not suggest, we are deciding and announcing  
3 that we will be starting at 1:30.

4 Thank you.

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 A-F-T-E-R-N-O-O-N S-E-S-S-I-O-N

2 (1:35 p.m.)

3 MS. PETERS: Good afternoon. Welcome to  
4 the last session of our last day of hearings. We're  
5 fortunate that Steve Metalitz made it here after a  
6 long and difficult trek. And what we've decided to  
7 do is to let Steve present the testimony that he  
8 would have presented this morning, and then we will  
9 just ask questions of him. And then we'll take the  
10 panel that we had intended, if it works out that  
11 way.

12 So, it's all yours, Steve.

13 MR. METALITZ: Thank you very much. And  
14 thank you, particularly, for accommodating the  
15 vagaries of my travel schedule. I should have known  
16 when I was about to step on Flight 301 from Chicago  
17 to San Jose that it would be pre-empted. And indeed  
18 it was, but I did get here eventually.

19 I'll try to be brief, because I am  
20 infringing on your schedule here. I wanted just to  
21 start by going back to the basics, which I'm sure  
22 have been reviewed several times in the last few  
23 days, as well as two weeks ago.

24 Congress established this rulemaking  
25 proceeding to answer a single question: Should the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 October 2000 effective date of the statutory cause  
2 of action against circumvention of access control  
3 measures be delayed with respect to any particular  
4 class of copyrighted works? That's the first basic.

5           And the second basic, as in any  
6 proceeding, is who has the burden of persuasion. I  
7 think it's clear that those who believe that the  
8 circumvention of access controls should remain legal  
9 after October 28 bear that burden, including the  
10 burden of defining as to what particular class of  
11 work the prohibition should not go into effect.

12           On behalf of the 17 copyrighted owner  
13 organizations that I represent, we feel that clearly  
14 the answer to the question Congress has asked is no,  
15 that as to no classes of works should the Section  
16 1201(a)(1) prohibition not come into effect.

17           And on the second question of the  
18 burden, it follows we don't believe the burden has  
19 been met to show that there's a need for any  
20 exception in this area.

21           This is a substantial burden, and I  
22 think everyone has recognized that. Some of the  
23 testimony you heard in Washington called it an  
24 illusory goal, or an unattainable dream, stated that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 it was impossible for anyone ever to meet this  
2 burden. I don't agree.

3                   This burden could be met if the  
4 proponents of an exception had specific, strong and  
5 persuasive evidence of the likely effects of the  
6 prohibition on the ability of users to make non-  
7 infringing uses of particular classes of works.  
8 That burden can be met, but it hasn't been met.  
9 Because that type of evidence has not been presented  
10 to you.

11                   You've received a huge volume of  
12 evidence, but most of that does not address the  
13 question, the only question that Congress directed  
14 you to answer. And what does address that question  
15 doesn't come close to carrying that burden.

16                   It seems as though some of the  
17 participants in this proceeding want to treat it as  
18 an open-ended discussion about the impact of  
19 technology on the way copyrighted materials are  
20 created and produced, marketed and distributed, on  
21 the effect of those technological changes on the  
22 relationships among creators, intermediaries,  
23 customers and other stakeholders.

24                   If that's what we were about here, the  
25 copyright industries and the copyright owner

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 organizations would have a lot to contribute to that  
2 discussion. We have a lot of concerns about those  
3 issues. But that's not what this proceeding is  
4 about. You're not here as moderators of a gripe  
5 session, or of an open-ended discussion. You're  
6 here as decision-makers or as recommenders of  
7 decisions on whether an act of Congress should take  
8 effect as scheduled.

9           You have a specific job to do, you have  
10 specific ground rules under which that job should be  
11 carried out, and I'd like to focus on those. The  
12 question before you, and the quantity of the  
13 evidence that's been presented to you. And whether  
14 it matches up to the burden that Congress has set in  
15 this proceeding.

16           Now, we've explained in our reply  
17 comments, which were quite extensive, why we think  
18 most of the evidence that's been submitted, at least  
19 so far, is not really relevant to this proceeding.  
20 It's aimed at answering other questions that  
21 Congress actually not only didn't direct you to  
22 answer, but Congress has already answered.

23           Questions such as whether copyright  
24 owners should have the right to employ technological  
25 measures to control or manage access to their works.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Questions such as what scope of exception should be  
2 provided for reverse engineering. Questions such as  
3 what should the relationship be between the  
4 anticircumvention prohibitions and the concept of  
5 fair use.

6 Those questions have been asked and  
7 answered, and to provide opinions on them in this  
8 proceeding really is of no value to you. They don't  
9 shed any light on the single question that Congress  
10 asked you to answer.

11 Now, a few of the submissions that  
12 you've received have sought to propose particular  
13 classes of works as to which circumvention of access  
14 control should remain legal after October 28th. In  
15 our view, none of those proposals pass muster. Most  
16 of them didn't really designate a class of works.

17 They really talked about an exemption  
18 based on the status of the user of a work. That's  
19 an approach that Congress considered during the  
20 deliberations on the DMCA, but that Congress  
21 ultimately rejected.

22 And when there has been an attempt in  
23 this proceeding to identify a class of works, upon  
24 close examination it proves to be an extremely

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 expansive class, and it's boundaries are very  
2 difficult to define.

3           But I think the main flaw of all these  
4 proposals is that they're not based on any specific  
5 evidence that the ability to make non-infringing  
6 uses of works would be harmed if Section 1201(a)(1)  
7 came into effect for all works, as Congress  
8 provided.

9           There have been a limited number of  
10 anecdotes that have been put forward as evidence of  
11 an adverse effect, but they don't withstand  
12 scrutiny. Even to the extent that any real threat  
13 of harm has been demonstrated, you have to balance  
14 that against the evidence that the use of access  
15 control measures has increased, and not decreased  
16 the availability of works for non-infringing uses  
17 since Congress directed this proceeding to undertake  
18 a net calculation.

19           Let me just say a word about the concept  
20 of particular classes of works. I know this has  
21 been a frustration to the members of the panel, to  
22 try to solve this conundrum that Congress has given  
23 it.

24           The question of what constitutes a  
25 particular class of works can't be answered in the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 abstract. And from our perspective, trying to  
2 answer that at this point would be like asking us to  
3 categorize or classify the specific angels that are  
4 dancing on the head of a pin. We'd be glad to try,  
5 but we just don't see any.

6 And until we see some evidence of  
7 specific adverse impacts, it's very difficult to  
8 figure out whether you can design a particular class  
9 of works that covers those adverse impacts.

10 If you agree with this, and if at the  
11 end of the day as you assess the evidence, you don't  
12 think that the adverse impact has been demonstrated,  
13 you may want to take the approach of not addressing  
14 the question of what would constitute a particular  
15 class of works. You may want to leave flexibility  
16 for yourselves and your successors three years from  
17 now in the next triennial proceeding, when the  
18 evidentiary record may be more complete.

19 At that time, if there is evidence of  
20 specific adverse impacts, that would be a point at  
21 which you'll need to decide whether that evidence  
22 can be organized to define particular classes of  
23 works.

24 Let me turn to, three issues that were  
25 quite prominent in the hearings in Washington. In

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 fact they're implicit in all of the testimony, but I  
2 think the Washington testimony brought them to the  
3 fore. And as I understand it, some of them have  
4 been revisited here.

5           The first is the question of initial  
6 lawful access, the second is the focus of this  
7 proceeding on fair use, and third is what I would  
8 call the bugaboo of pay-per-use.

9           First, the notion that it should be  
10 permissible to tamper with access controls as long  
11 as they manage something other than initial access  
12 to copyrighted materials. I call this the initial  
13 lawful access approach, because that's what its  
14 proponents called it two years ago when they sought  
15 to persuade Congress that these second-level  
16 controls, or persistent access controls ought to be  
17 fair game for circumvention.

18           They weren't able to persuade Congress  
19 then, and for that reason perhaps they don't use the  
20 phrase as much now. But it's basically the same  
21 approach.

22           This approach sees access controls as an  
23 on/off switch, and nothing more. Or in fact as  
24 something less, because under this analysis once  
25 access is switched on it can never be switched off.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 In this view every license is a perpetual license,  
2 or should be. Subscribers to copyrighted materials,  
3 like diamonds, are forever.

4 That's the approach that underlies  
5 Professor Jaszi's suggestion, for example, that  
6 works embodied in copies which have been lawfully  
7 acquired by users who subsequently seek to make non-  
8 infringing uses thereof, that those users ought to  
9 be free to circumvent access controls in that  
10 endeavor.

11 This rulemaking may originally, at one  
12 point, have been intended to give a privileged  
13 status to those who claim to have achieved initial  
14 lawful access to a copy of a work. But Congress  
15 thought better of this approach. It was dropped  
16 like a stone when the bill reached the conference  
17 committee.

18 And the reasons for Congress' change of  
19 mind are, I think, not hard to understand. The  
20 concept that people who obtain initial lawful access  
21 ought to be free to circumvent thereafter is  
22 antithetical to promoting the availability of  
23 copyrighted works. If the on switch can never be  
24 turned off, there's little incentive ever to provide  
25 initial access in the first place.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           By contrast these second-level controls,  
2 or persistent access controls as some have called  
3 them, are being used to maximize access by the  
4 greatest number of users in the most efficient  
5 manner permitted by digital technology.

6           For example, time-limited access, which  
7 is an example of this type of persistent access  
8 control. It's not a new concept, it's not a radical  
9 concept. And certainly the library community is  
10 familiar with it because the most familiar example  
11 might be the public library, where borrowing a book  
12 does not entitle you to keep it forever. The video  
13 rental store operates on the same principle.

14           Technological measures have been used  
15 for decades to enforce time-limited access to  
16 copyrighted materials. Once your subscription to a  
17 premium cable service expires, scrambling technology  
18 denies you access to reruns of the programs to which  
19 you once enjoyed initial lawful access. Black boxes  
20 aimed at overcoming this access control mechanism  
21 have been outlawed for many years.

22           Libraries and our research institutions  
23 seemed to have survived this development. So it's a  
24 little hard to understand the intensity of their  
25 expressed concern that extending this model to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 online and other digital media will be fatal to  
2 their future.

3           Of course, they're more used to dealing  
4 with the traditional environment in which purchase  
5 of a physical copy entitled the purchaser to  
6 perpetual access to the work it contained. But as  
7 long ago as 1976 Congress made it clear that to  
8 equate the copy with the work is a fallacy.

9           You heard testimony earlier this month  
10 from David Mirchin of Silver Platter that made it  
11 clear that libraries have functioned successfully  
12 for years in an environment which includes so-called  
13 second-level access controls, such as a licensed  
14 limit on the number of simultaneous users.

15           And I think it's significant that,  
16 according to all the testimony I heard -- and  
17 perhaps you heard something different in the last  
18 day -- libraries haven't found it necessary to  
19 circumvent the existing access control measure in  
20 order to deliver to their users the enhanced and  
21 expanded access to copyrighted materials that  
22 digital technology enables.

23           It's really hard to conclude from this  
24 evidence that cataclysmic changes will occur, or any  
25 significant adverse effect, once the legal

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 prohibition against circumvention comes into force  
2 on October 28th. Some witnesses have told you that  
3 Congress really didn't have these persistent or  
4 second-level access controls in mind when it enacted  
5 Section 1201(a).

6 I think if you look at the legislative  
7 history it's clear that this is exactly what  
8 Congress had in mind when it talked about access  
9 controls. The House Manager's Report gives the  
10 example of an access control that "would not  
11 necessarily prevent access to the work altogether,  
12 but could be designed to allow access during a  
13 limited time period, such as during a period of  
14 library borrowing."

15 The House Manager cited this as an  
16 example of a technological measure that would  
17 "support new ways of disseminating copyrighted  
18 materials to users, and safeguard the availability  
19 of legitimate uses of those materials by  
20 individuals."

21 So in fact Congress not only was aware  
22 of these technologies, it counted them on the  
23 positive side of the ledger, and encouraged you to  
24 count them on the positive side of the ledger in  
25 trying to figure out the impact of access controls

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 on the availability of works for non-infringing  
2 uses.

3           Let me speak a word about non-infringing  
4 uses. Congress didn't ask about the impact of the  
5 circumvention prohibition on fair use, it asked  
6 about its impact on non-infringing use. And, of  
7 course, that's a much broader category. It includes  
8 fair use, but it also includes licensed or permitted  
9 uses.

10           I had the feeling from some of the  
11 testimony and submissions that licensed uses really  
12 don't count, because they depend upon the agreement  
13 with the copyright owner. It's the same theory that  
14 makes the apples that you filch from the orchard  
15 taste a little sweeter than those that you buy at  
16 the store. But from the standpoint of the end-user,  
17 it's hard to see the relevance of this distinction.

18           I think Congress took the same view,  
19 which is a practical view. So long as the public is  
20 able to make use of these materials without  
21 violating the copyright law, why is that  
22 availability somehow tainted, if it takes place with  
23 the consent of the copyright owner?

24           I think the mindset that reads non-  
25 infringing use to mean only fair use helps explain

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 why the witnesses, again, were not able to come up  
2 with any concrete instances in which circumvention  
3 of technological measures is necessary to serve  
4 library patrons, or students or researchers.

5           Time and again you were told that there  
6 are potential problems, but that they so far have  
7 been resolved in negotiations with the copyright  
8 owner. This may be disappointing to some of the  
9 intermediaries who are shouldering the burden of  
10 persuading you that there should be exceptions to  
11 Section 1201(a)(1). But it's good news for the end-  
12 user, and that's the party on whose benefit Congress  
13 directed that this proceeding be carried out.

14           Finally, let me just say a word about  
15 pay-per-use. This is a pricing strategy that we  
16 find in some areas of the copyright market. And  
17 some of your witnesses portrayed it as not only  
18 fatal to the American scholarly enterprise, but  
19 actually unconstitutional.

20           Pay-per-use, like time-limited access,  
21 has a very distinguished pedigree. Look back to the  
22 first concert or play for which admission was ever  
23 charged, which was a pay-per-use of the performance  
24 of copyrighted work. Up to the present day this is  
25 widely used for the delivery of some types of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 performances by cable, satellite, over the Internet.

2                   Interestingly, the area where it's  
3 probably made the least inroads is in the academic  
4 and library markets. Pay-per-use -- or rather, I  
5 should say, unmetered use is probably much more  
6 prevalent today than it was 10 or 15 years ago, when  
7 you had connect time charging, per-search pricing  
8 and these other pricing strategies that are less  
9 common today.

10                   In fact, you could make the argument  
11 that, under some circumstances, pay-per-use may be a  
12 cheaper and more efficient means for libraries and  
13 educational institutions to serve their  
14 constituencies than the unlimited use model which  
15 currently prevails.

16                   I think what we'll see, that we've seen  
17 so far, is that where that argument has merit the  
18 market develops in that fashion. Where pay-per-use  
19 is disfavored for whatever reason, it will remain an  
20 exception and not the norm. But for your purposes,  
21 the purposes of this proceeding, I think the  
22 opponents of pay-per-use have failed to make any  
23 persuasive showing that the pay-per-use model will  
24 become more prevalent unless the effective date of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Section 1201(a)(1)(A) is delayed for some particular  
2 class of works.

3 And even if they were able to carry that  
4 burden, they would still have to show that such an  
5 outcome would be likely to lead in balance to the  
6 adverse impact which Congress was concerned to  
7 prevent, and which Congress directed your attention  
8 to.

9 All this gets back to the evidence, how  
10 it matches up with the burden that Congress imposed.  
11 And I think on review of the evidence, I would  
12 suggest to you that there's really not enough  
13 concrete evidence on which the Librarian could  
14 rationally base a finding that an adverse impact is  
15 likely to occur if Section 1201(a)(1)(A) goes into  
16 effect on schedule.

17 You've heard from witnesses their  
18 apprehensions about pay-per-use and persistent  
19 access controls, but many of those same witnesses  
20 said that so far they haven't encountered those  
21 phenomena. They're worried about licensing terms  
22 that will be inflexible or intrusive. Some of the  
23 witnesses quite candidly asked you to use this  
24 proceeding to improve their bargaining position.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           So far these problems have not  
2 materialized. They predict that it will be  
3 necessary to circumvent access controls in the  
4 future. And therefore they ask you to stop the  
5 congressional prohibition on that behavior from  
6 taking effect. But so far, even though it is not  
7 currently a violation of law to circumvent these  
8 measures in most cases, they can't point to a single  
9 instance where they've needed to do so.

10           In short, in a proceeding which must be  
11 based on facts, these witnesses have bought you  
12 fears. And the evidentiary foundation they  
13 presented is too flimsy to support a decision to  
14 delay the effective date of Section 1201(a)(1)(A)  
15 for any class of works.

16           On behalf of the organizations  
17 representing a broad spectrum of U.S. copyright  
18 owners, I urge you to recommend to the Librarian  
19 that the cause of action for circumvention of access  
20 control measures take effect as scheduled, for all  
21 works protected by copyright.

22           Thank you again for your indulgence in  
23 my tardiness. And I'd be glad to answer any  
24 questions.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MS. PETERS: Thank you for managing to  
2 make it here. I want to start the questioning with  
3 Rob.

4 MR. KASUNIC: Good afternoon. Suppose I  
5 told you that yesterday we heard compelling and  
6 highly specific testimony that there was a  
7 demonstrable adverse effect from access control  
8 measures utilized in a particular class of works,  
9 namely motion pictures. And in addition, these  
10 motion pictures were only available in digital  
11 format. So, a sole source situation.

12 How would we define a coherent, well-  
13 defined class of works? Would we exempt all motion  
14 pictures as a class, so that anyone could circumvent  
15 these technological protection measures, both  
16 purchasers and pirates, or would we define the class  
17 as motion pictures that were lawfully acquired?

18 MR. METALITZ: Well, I can't really  
19 answer a hypothetical question, based on the  
20 evidence that I'm not familiar with. But I think,  
21 in general, if you were convinced that there had  
22 been this -- or that there was a likelihood of this  
23 significant adverse impact, you would then need to  
24 try to fashion a definition that would be neither  
25 under-inclusive nor over-inclusive.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   One that would capture the types of  
2 works as to which that impact had been demonstrated,  
3 and didn't go far afield into areas where that  
4 adverse effect hadn't been demonstrated, or didn't  
5 appear to be likely.

6                   Congress obviously didn't give you a lot  
7 of guidance on this, but they did suggest that it  
8 ought to be a particularized determination. And  
9 something that was simply based on one type of  
10 protective technology was not appropriate, that a  
11 definition based on one category or description of  
12 users probably wasn't appropriate.

13                   That the touchstone is what class of  
14 works can you describe as to which the -- again, not  
15 the use of the access controls, that's not the issue  
16 -- but the prohibition against circumvention of the  
17 access controls would be likely to achieve that  
18 adverse impact.

19                   So I doubt that it would be a category  
20 as broad as all motion pictures. I doubt that it  
21 would be a category as broad as all motion pictures  
22 in a particular technological format. But, again,  
23 that's the kind of question that I find it very  
24 difficult to answer in the absence of evidence.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           Because, for one thing, it may bind your  
2 hands -- or those of your successors -- when they  
3 actually have to deal with evidence that there has  
4 been significant adverse impact. So I think caution  
5 is probably advised in this area, except and unless  
6 -- except to the extent that you are persuaded that  
7 the proponents of an exception had met their burden.

8           MR. KASUNIC: In the legislative history  
9 there was discussion in the House Judiciary Report,  
10 early on, that "[p]aragraph 1(a)(1) does not apply  
11 to subsequent actions of a person once he or she has  
12 obtained authorized access to a copy of a work  
13 protected under Title 17, even if such action  
14 involves circumvention of additional forms of  
15 technological protection measures."

16           Doesn't this passage support the  
17 proposed exemption by some groups that classes of  
18 works that are initially lawfully accessed should be  
19 -- you should be able to circumvent?

20           MR. METALITZ: Well, I think to the  
21 extent that it does, you have to look at the whole  
22 legislative history. That provision was in the  
23 House Judiciary Report, which is at an early state.  
24 It did refer to 1201(a)(1) which is now

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 1201(a)(1)(A), and I don't think there's been any  
2 change in that language.

3           But I think if you look at the  
4 legislative history underlying this proceeding, and  
5 how you're supposed to answer that question, what  
6 issues you're supposed to look at, it's clear that  
7 Congress thought that access control mechanisms that  
8 applied after "initial lawful access," could have a  
9 use-facilitating or use-enhancing effect. And that  
10 they were a positive element in the calculus for  
11 what the impact of these technologies -- and even  
12 more importantly -- of the prohibition would be on  
13 the availability of works for non-infringing uses.  
14 So I think you'd have to put that observation in  
15 that context.

16           MR. KASUNIC: We had discussed, earlier  
17 this morning, some of the statements in the comments  
18 on reverse engineering. And in your comment, as  
19 well, there was a discussion that Section 1201(f)  
20 would prohibit the Librarian from making a  
21 determination on this area of -- within the scope of  
22 1201(a)(1)(A). That because Congress had already  
23 acted in that area, that there was no room.

24           Is that something that would be -- in  
25 terms of changes in technology, if this was -- those

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 exemptions were done at a specific point in time, if  
2 at some point in time adverse effects were shown in  
3 relation to that, would reverse engineering be  
4 something that the Librarian would be prevented from  
5 addressing?

6 MR. METALITZ: Well, it depends on what  
7 they would be. 1201(a)(1), as you know, of course,  
8 is not in effect. It is not now a violation to  
9 circumvent access control measures for the purpose  
10 of reverse engineering, whether or not that reverse  
11 engineering would be infringing under the copyright  
12 law or not.

13 On October 28th, it will be illegal to  
14 do that. But only within the scope of what  
15 1201(a)(1) provides, and Section 1201(f) provides an  
16 exception to Section 1201(a)(1) in certain  
17 circumstances. And to kind of oversimplify it,  
18 perhaps a little bit, if the circumvention is  
19 necessary in order to obtain information in a  
20 reverse engineering context that would not  
21 constitute an infringement, then there's an  
22 exception to Section 1201(a)(1) as well.

23 So that's an area where the scope of the  
24 circumvention prohibition is linked with issues of  
25 infringement to a great extent, if not exactly the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 full extent. So if in the future, you found that  
2 people -- because they couldn't circumvent in the  
3 circumstances that didn't fall within the Section  
4 1201(f) exception, because those circumventions  
5 remained illegal, that therefore caused an adverse  
6 impact on the availability of works for non-  
7 infringing uses, then you would be in the realm of  
8 the kind of things that the triennial proceedings is  
9 supposed to look at.

10 But it doesn't look at Section  
11 1201(a)(1) in a vacuum. Section 1201(a)(1), when it  
12 goes into effect, will be subject to exceptions for  
13 reverse engineering, for computer security, for  
14 encryption research. I think those are the  
15 principal ones, and there may be others as well.

16 So that's the prohibition whose impact  
17 you're supposed to assess, either today its  
18 anticipated impact, or three years from now its  
19 actual impact, as well as anticipated over the  
20 following three years. I don't know if that answers  
21 your question.

22 MR. KASUNIC: Yes. We have also heard a  
23 lot of evidence or rather, a lot of testimony from  
24 the library community and educators that this would  
25 cause the prohibition, and Section 1201(a)(1) would

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 cause a chilling effect. And to what extent is a  
2 chilling effect an adverse effect -- something that  
3 should be considered -- or is the likelihood of a  
4 chilling effect something that should be considered?

5 MR. METALITZ: I'm not sure what it  
6 would be a chilling effect on. Usually, that term  
7 is used in the First Amendment context. Is that  
8 what --

9 MR. KASUNIC: A chilling effect on  
10 making fair use determinations. With some of the  
11 criminal ramifications and civil penalties involved,  
12 and the uncertainty with a number of the terms that  
13 are involved in Section 1201(a)(1) -- there has been  
14 the claim that there is a certain amount of  
15 vagueness to some of the terms -- that this  
16 uncertainty would really prevent librarians who, it  
17 was stated, were by their nature cautious, from  
18 exercising privileges. The penalties and  
19 ambiguities would cause a chilling effect on the use  
20 of certain privileges that existed.

21 MR. METALITZ: I think it would help in  
22 evaluating that claim if we knew what types of  
23 activities were being chilled. The whole chilling  
24 concept is, you know, how close to the line of  
25 legality do you encourage people to go. And the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 evidence so far is that they're all the way across  
2 the room from the line of legality.

3                   When you asked the witnesses in  
4 Washington whether they had ever had to circumvent  
5 access controls in order to serve their patrons, the  
6 answer was no. And when they raised fears about  
7 some of the areas where this might happen, such as  
8 with the image databases and so forth, you pressed  
9 them.

10                   It seemed to me that the evidence was  
11 that they'd been able to resolve this in  
12 negotiations with the copyright owners. So that  
13 doesn't sound as though they've been chilled yet.  
14 Because every time they felt cold, they've been able  
15 to find some warmth somewhere.

16                   So I think you'd have to know more about  
17 what types of activities they claim they were  
18 discouraged from undertaking before you could  
19 evaluate whether a chilling effect was something  
20 that amounted to a significant adverse impact, as  
21 Congress directed you to assess.

22                   MR. KASUNIC: Thanks. That's all I  
23 have.

24                   MS. PETERS: Thank you. Rachel?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MS. GOSLINS: Mr. Metalitz, I think  
2 we've asked this question of almost every content  
3 owner representative in front of us. And I think  
4 we've yet to get an answer we can take to the bank.  
5 But I'm going to try again.

6 You have all provided us with numerous  
7 examples of what is not a class of works. And I'm  
8 curious as to whether you have an example of what  
9 might a class of works.

10 MR. METALITZ: Well, I'm not sure you're  
11 going to be able to bank any more on what I'm saying  
12 than what the others have said. And I'd like to  
13 explain the reason why. I've referred to this in my  
14 testimony.

15 When you're dealing with a null set, it  
16 is extremely difficult to categorize it, or classify  
17 it. The danger of doing that is that you set up  
18 rules that, in the hypothetical situation, that may  
19 not be the right ones when your set is no longer  
20 null, and you actually have some examples of adverse  
21 impact.

22 You know, I recall your dialogue about  
23 this with Mr. Lutzker. Some things that he said I  
24 wouldn't disagree with. For example, it doesn't  
25 necessarily have to be a subset of the categories of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 works in the Act -- not an exhaustive list -- that's  
2 laid out in the act of the cross-cutting. Or you  
3 could say a class includes elements from more than  
4 one of those categories.

5                   But, again, it's very hard to answer  
6 that when we think we're dealing with -- from our  
7 perspective, we're dealing with nothing. We're  
8 dealing with a null set. Let's see the examples,  
9 let's find the clear cases of adverse impact. Then  
10 it would be more realistic to try to say, "Well, can  
11 we define a particular class of works that kind of  
12 covers that waterfront?"

13                   MS. GOSLINS: I had a similar discussion  
14 with Mr. Simon this morning, and he similarly said  
15 you have look at the harm. The problem, I think, in  
16 that is that on one hand we have significant amount  
17 of content owners telling us we shouldn't look at  
18 uses or users in defining a class of works. On the  
19 other hand, how can you look at harm without looking  
20 at who is being harmed, and what they're doing in  
21 which they're suffering the harm?

22                   So it's hard to recommend -- do you have  
23 any suggests on reconciling -- defining classes by  
24 who is being harmed, and what they're doing, on one

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 hand. And not looking at uses or users on the  
2 other.

3 MR. METALITZ: I think when you're  
4 looking at the evidence, you have to look at the  
5 uses and the users. Because you're going to have  
6 examples. The example will be User X is unable to  
7 make this particular type of non-infringing use of  
8 this particular work, because of the prohibition  
9 against circumventing access controls on that work.

10 Then you no longer have a null set.  
11 You'd have an example, you'd have at least a  
12 species. And then you'd have to try to figure out -  
13 - and maybe if you have two species or three  
14 species, then you'd try to figure out what's the  
15 generic class of works that covers those examples.

16 So I don't think it's irrelevant. I  
17 think the examples that you would get obviously have  
18 to have some explanation of who the user is, and  
19 what use it is that they wish to make, or are unable  
20 to make. But then at that point you have to go to  
21 the next level of analysis and define a particular  
22 class of works that covers that. Again, we don't  
23 see that first step has been shown.

24 MS. GOSLINS: As I understood one of the  
25 points in your argument, was that non-infringing

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 uses should cover -- what we should be looking at is  
2 adverse impacts on other things, such as licensed  
3 uses or specifically-permitted uses under specific  
4 exemptions.

5                   And I think, in fact, we have heard some  
6 examples of problems in those categories. In the  
7 Washington hearings we had a gentleman who talked  
8 extensively about dongles, and what happens when you  
9 have a lost or damaged dongle. You still have an  
10 operating license, but you're unable to replace it  
11 because the company isn't willing, or it's out of  
12 business.

13                   Yesterday -- I don't think you were here  
14 -- but Lolly Gassaway representing the AAU and  
15 several other organizations, talked about a CD that  
16 she had in her library where the content expired,  
17 even though there was no license term restricting  
18 the content. Restricting the time or limiting the  
19 time that the content should have been available.  
20 So that was a mistake situation.

21                   We also had testimony about libraries'  
22 statutory rights to lend certain things like books  
23 or software programs. And their inability to do so  
24 if the material is encrypted, because they wouldn't

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 be able to lend the decryption key to the person to  
2 whom they were lending the object.

3                   So we do have examples of ways in which  
4 people may be prohibited from making uses that would  
5 be permissible under their license or under the  
6 statute. And I'm just curious as to how you would  
7 respond to those.

8                   MR. METALITZ: Well, let me take it in  
9 reverse order. The decryption key issue, if I  
10 understand it, is really a question of whether  
11 there's a license agreement that is not -- you  
12 referred, I think, to a statutory right to lend  
13 something, and that certainly is a right that can be  
14 modified by a license agreement.

15                   So that when a library, let's say,  
16 acquires a piece of software, they, I would think,  
17 ordinarily do so subject to a license that states  
18 the circumstances under which it can be lent. So I  
19 think that's really --

20                   MS. GOSLINS: But let's assume there's  
21 not a license. If a library purchases a copy of  
22 Steven King's e-book, "Riding A Bullet," I think  
23 it's called. It can only be played on the computer  
24 which downloads that for that content.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   And even if there's no licensing term  
2 restricting them from lending the book, checking it  
3 out to the extent that they could do so  
4 technologically, they're incapable of doing so  
5 because of the access control protections.

6                   MR. METALITZ: Well, I think you're  
7 going to hear more about that in the next panel.  
8 Because that's a species of the general problem,  
9 which is whether the acquisition of a copy -- to say  
10 it that way -- necessarily brings with it the right  
11 to play that copy, use that copy on a machine of  
12 one's own choosing. Or, rather, on the one that the  
13 copyright owner intended that it be used on.

14                   I think that would be an expansion of  
15 what ordinarily has been considered the privileges  
16 of the user. It's kind of like saying if you bought  
17 a Betamax tape, you have to be able to play it on a  
18 VHS machine, and vice versa. Again, these are not  
19 always problems that are as new as we sometimes  
20 think they are.

21                   MS. GOSLINS: But, historically, the  
22 Copyright Act does go out of its way to ensure  
23 libraries have the ability to do certain things that  
24 a normal individual user wouldn't have. Like

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 archive, and like lend, and like preserve materials.  
2 I mean, that is --

3 MR. METALITZ: Right. Section 108 gives  
4 them those privileges. And I think that was -- if I  
5 understood it, that was your second example that  
6 Lolly -- was that a preservation issue that she was  
7 raising?

8 MS. GOSLINS: No. She had purchased --  
9 my understanding is she had purchased a CD without  
10 any time restriction on it, and the material  
11 expired. And after a fair amount of time she was  
12 able to get the manufacturer to replace it, because  
13 it had been a mistake.

14 MR. METALITZ: And, you know, if her  
15 library has bought defective books -- that the  
16 bindings came apart and the pages fell apart  
17 quickly, too. You know, this happens. And I don't  
18 know that it's a copyright infringement when that  
19 occurs.

20 The preservation issue, as you  
21 mentioned, there are privileges as far as the  
22 ability to copy. And I think the issue you'd have  
23 to look at there is what exactly is it that the  
24 library or archive wants to do that they're unable  
25 to do without circumventing access controls.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           In some cases what they're concerned  
2 about is a copy control. They have it, they have  
3 access to it, but they can't copy it to move it from  
4 a fragile medium to a better medium, or from an  
5 obsolete medium to a non-obsolete medium. And that's  
6 a Section 108 issue, as to the copyright side. It's  
7 a non-issue to the extent that 1201 affects it,  
8 because as you know, it's not a violation to  
9 circumvent a copy control.

10           So those are instances in which they  
11 don't need to violate 1201(a)(1) in order to achieve  
12 their objective. Then you have some circumstances,  
13 I would think, in which even if they did violate  
14 Section 1201(a)(1) once it comes into effect, they  
15 still wouldn't achieve their objective.

16           If you have something that is in a  
17 medium where the hardware no longer exists or isn't  
18 accessible for you to play it, then the fact that  
19 you have a decryption key that you can use once you  
20 get it on a piece of compatible hardware doesn't  
21 really help you.

22           So whether or not they circumvent  
23 Section 1201(a)(1) isn't going to have a direct  
24 impact on the ability to make non-infringing uses.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           But, again, I would come back to the  
2 question of what's the status quo? What's happening  
3 today? Today, aside from the cable area and a few  
4 other areas, it's not illegal to circumvent access  
5 controls. Where are the instances in which  
6 libraries are forced to do this in order to gain  
7 access to this material?

8           Or are they able to gain it in other  
9 ways, either by locating another library that has  
10 the material in a usable format, and then using one  
11 of the exceptions in the Copyright Act to be able to  
12 gain access to it that way, or by dealing with the  
13 copyright owners. I think you'd have to look at the  
14 specifics.

15           MS. GOSLINS: But if we just look at a  
16 narrow category in which the owner of -- or a user  
17 of a product has a license or the legal entitled to  
18 do something. And for some reason in this very  
19 narrow category, other than arguably the intent of  
20 the copyright owner, they are prohibited from doing  
21 so by access control protections -- either because  
22 it's malfunctioning or because they can't get a  
23 replacement for their dongle, because the copyright  
24 owner has gone out of business or isn't responding  
25 to their calls.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           In those situations do you think -- and  
2 let's assume they want to make non-infringing use --  
3 in those situations do you think it would be  
4 appropriate to allow them to circumvent the access  
5 control?

6           MR. METALITZ: I think, again, you'd  
7 have to look at the specifics. The dongle  
8 situation, in some cases the copyright owner, as I  
9 recall the testimony, was out of business. And the  
10 witness had built a thriving business on perhaps  
11 violating Section 1201(a)(2).

12           I don't know whether that's the case or  
13 not, or 1201(b)(1) -- because in many cases these  
14 would be copy controls. But in any case he seemed  
15 to be having the business unmolested of providing  
16 these solutions to them.

17           But the other thing that he was unhappy  
18 about was that in the case of some of this high-end  
19 software the copyright owner was saying, "Well, if  
20 you buy it with the dongle, and you lose the dongle,  
21 you have to buy another copy of the software." It  
22 seems to me that's a market issue more than a  
23 copyright issue. Unless you think there's an  
24 entitlement to a particular license term which is,  
25 if you lose the dongle you get a new one free.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           I don't think that the copyright law  
2 dictates that, nor do I think that that would be a  
3 good reason to intervene and bring the -- or hold up  
4 the applicability of Section 1201(a)(1). So, you'd  
5 have to look at the specifics.

6           MS. GOSLINS: All right. One final  
7 question, just sort of a statutory interpretation  
8 question. So if you have a copy of the DMCA handy -  
9 - I don't know if you do. You might be able to just  
10 answer this without looking at it.

11           In your understanding of the statute,  
12 let's assume for a moment that we were to exempt a  
13 particular class of works, assuming we could figure  
14 out what one was. So we recommend to the Librarian,  
15 who recommends to Congress that a certain class of  
16 works be exempted, and that's accepted. Then what  
17 happens?

18           Are all uses of that -- of anything in  
19 that particular class of works then exempted from  
20 the Section 1201(a)(1) prohibition, or only non-  
21 infringing uses?

22           MR. METALITZ: Well, I don't think you  
23 have the authority to decide whether infringing uses  
24 are excused. That's a copyright law issue, not a  
25 Section 1201 issue. What the Librarian has the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 authority to decide without going back to Congress,  
2 is whether the Section 1201(a)(1) prohibition will  
3 go into effect for a particular class of works.

4 MS. GOSLINS: And that's what I'm  
5 focusing on, what it means to go into effect. If we  
6 recommend a class of works which is accepted, then  
7 what is the effect of that exemption? Is it that  
8 from that point on, anything -- let's use chemistry  
9 textbooks. We recommend chemistry textbooks as a --  
10 I know the chemists are going to come after us. I  
11 won't keep using that example.

12 We recommend chemistry textbooks as a  
13 class of works that's exempted, and that's accepted.  
14 Then can anyone circumvent access control  
15 protections to a chemistry textbook, or only people  
16 who intend to make non-infringing uses of it?

17 MR. METALITZ: It would depend on how  
18 you define the particular class of works. Because  
19 if you define a particular class of work as  
20 chemistry textbooks, then I assume that if someone  
21 brought a Section 1201(a)(1) action against someone  
22 for circumventing the access control on the  
23 chemistry textbooks, that that would not be a valid  
24 cause of action, at least until October 28, 2003.  
25 At that point it would be a valid cause of action,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 unless you made a new determination that chemistry  
2 textbooks --

3 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. Can I ask you to  
4 look at 1201(a)(1)(D). I apologize, it's a little  
5 dense as far as provisions go, and I don't mean to  
6 spring it on you now.

7 MR. METALITZ: No apologies are needed.

8 MS. GOSLINS: We've had some testimony  
9 that once the Librarian publishes an exempted class  
10 of works, then -- as you'll see by the last sort of  
11 two lines in it, "the prohibition contained in  
12 Subparagraph A should not apply to such users,"  
13 meaning non-infringing users.

14 MR. METALITZ: No, it doesn't mean that.  
15 It means a user who circumvents. I remember this --  
16 I know what you're driving at here, because this was  
17 from the earlier testimony. In fact, when we go  
18 back and look at 1201(1)(a), "prohibition shall not  
19 apply to persons who are users of a copyrighted  
20 work." And this is the point I think Arnie Lutzker  
21 was making.

22 The reason it says that is, the only  
23 person who can be guilty of a violation of Section  
24 1201(a)(1) is a user of the work. That's the person  
25 who circumvents an access control measure. You

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 don't bring that claim, that cause of action  
2 against, for example, somebody who posts the  
3 decryption algorithm on the Internet. That person  
4 may not be circumventing, but they're trafficking in  
5 the tools of circumvention. That's a 1201(a)(2)  
6 issue.

7                   But Section 1201(a)(1), the defendant is  
8 the user who circumvents an access control. And  
9 what you have the power to recommend, or the  
10 Librarian has the power to decide, is which users  
11 can do that without violating the law for that  
12 three-year period.

13                   MS. GOSLINS: Not really which users,  
14 right? Which classes of works, that can be done,  
15 too.

16                   MR. METALITZ: That's correct. If the  
17 user is circumventing the access control for a  
18 particular class of work, and that happens to fall  
19 within the particular class of work that you have  
20 identified, then that person is immune from  
21 liability under Section 1201(a)(1).

22                   You have to say "user" because you don't  
23 sue the work. The defendant is not the work, the  
24 defendant is not the particular class of work. It's  
25 a user of a particular class of work who is

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 privileged -- if you so decide and if the Librarian  
2 agrees -- to circumvent an access control measure  
3 during a specified period of time.

4 MS. GOSLINS: But if you look at  
5 Subsection D -- and I don't mean to argue with you  
6 here, I'm just trying to understand myself as I go  
7 through this statute. It says, "The Librarian shall  
8 publish any class of copyrighted works for which the  
9 Librarian has determined pursuant to the rulemaking  
10 conducted under Subparagraph C, that non-infringing  
11 uses by persons who are users of a copyrighted work  
12 are or are likely to be adversely affected. And the  
13 prohibition contained in Subparagraph A shall not  
14 apply to such users with respect to such class of  
15 works."

16 So why would they say "such users"  
17 unless they were referring to the users who were  
18 making the non-infringing uses? The persons who  
19 were making non-infringing uses?

20 MR. METALITZ: Well, the people who want  
21 to make non-infringing uses are adversely affected  
22 in their ability to do that. That's the threshold  
23 that you have to cross in order to make that  
24 determination. If you find that there isn't an  
25 adverse impact on non-infringing uses, then we're

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 not going to designate that particular class of  
2 work.

3                   But once you designate that particular  
4 class of work, it's not that 1201(a)(1)(A) doesn't  
5 apply to those uses, it doesn't apply to those  
6 users, such users. And I would think that that  
7 refers back to persons who are users of a  
8 copyrighted work, rather than the non-infringing  
9 uses. That's a threshold question you have to  
10 decide.

11                   MS. GOSLINS: But then wouldn't such be  
12 totally redundant? And why wouldn't it just say the  
13 prohibition contained in Subparagraph A shall not  
14 apply to users with respect to such class of works.  
15 Or the prohibition contained in Subparagraph A shall  
16 not apply to such class of works.

17                   MR. METALITZ: I think the reason it  
18 doesn't say the latter is probably because the claim  
19 is not brought against a class of works, it's  
20 brought against a user.

21                   So your question is inevitably -- in  
22 other words, in your particular class of work only  
23 applied to --

24                   MS. GOSLINS: The prohibition, the  
25 exemption would only apply to people who were

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 circumventing access control protections for that  
2 particular class of works who were making non-  
3 infringing uses thereof.

4 MR. METALITZ: Well, I think if you were  
5 able to maintain a perfect fit between what the  
6 evidence showed and what the scope of your  
7 particular class was, that that would be the  
8 outcome. Because you would be able to tailor the  
9 particular class to only cover the evidence that you  
10 were persuaded by, that showed this adverse impact.

11 MR. CARSON: I just want to make sure.  
12 I think I'm following you, but I just want to make  
13 sure we're absolutely clear on this.

14 Let's assume that we determine that  
15 motion pictures are one of those classes. I'm not  
16 saying we're going to, but just for sake of the  
17 example. Let's say Rachel is a professor of film  
18 history at some university, and I'm someone who  
19 manufactures illicit CDs or DVDs of motion pictures.

20 Now, motion pictures, maybe even motion  
21 pictures on DVDs, have been exempted from this. Are  
22 you saying that when Rachel wants to do this, in  
23 order to excerpt -- to make excerpts from motion  
24 pictures to show to her class in an instructional  
25 context, she's able to take advantage of that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 exemption to circumvent. That, I gather, would be  
2 clear. Are you following me so far?

3 MR. METALITZ: Yes.

4 MR. CARSON: And because that class is  
5 exempted, if I want to take advantage of the ability  
6 to circumvent so that I can make all sorts of copies  
7 and market them, I would also be exempt because  
8 we've exempted that class. Is that what you're  
9 saying?

10 MR. METALITZ: I think this follows from  
11 the independence of the infringement action from the  
12 1201 liability. The fact that you were making an --  
13 that you were setting out to infringe means you're  
14 going to be guilty of copyright infringement.

15 MR. CARSON: Okay. A representative of  
16 at least one of the people whom you represent right  
17 now, this morning took exactly the opposite point of  
18 view. So you might want to clarify just what your  
19 view, or the views of all the people you're  
20 representing, actually are on that. Not that it's  
21 dispositive of the issue, but it would help us  
22 perhaps to know whether you're speaking with one  
23 voice, or what on that issue.

24 MR. METALITZ: Well, we're a very  
25 diverse group, as you know.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 (Laughter.)

2 MR. METALITZ: We've already had one  
3 member of our group tell you that the whole idea of  
4 recognizing particular classes of works is  
5 unconstitutional, which I don't think is our  
6 unanimous view.

7 But I think this helps to illustrate  
8 some of the difficulties you run into when you're  
9 talking about this in hypothetical terms. And I  
10 know you have to operate that way, but it becomes  
11 difficult to answer these questions in the absence  
12 of concrete evidence of adverse impact. And  
13 thankfully, I think Congress recognized that.

14 They said you shouldn't find any class,  
15 you shouldn't even delve into these issues of what  
16 constitutes a particular class, and whether it  
17 necessarily includes users who are ultimately making  
18 infringing uses, or ultimately making non-infringing  
19 uses, unless you have specific strong and persuasive  
20 evidence that this is likely to occur.

21 If you have that, then maybe it becomes  
22 a little bit easier to answer these questions. And  
23 part of them could be answered, to some degree,  
24 definitionally. How clearly do you define a  
25 particular class of works? I'm not saying that's a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 panacea in all these cases, but I think it  
2 illustrates the wisdom of waiting until you have  
3 concrete evidence before you try to answer that  
4 question.

5 MS. DOUGLASS: I have just a couple of  
6 quick, kind of broad questions. And I hope they  
7 don't indicate that I have one view or another.  
8 It's just that I'm trying to put some clothes on a  
9 stick figure in my mind, as far as some of these  
10 concepts are concerned. And thinking that it might  
11 be helpful to laypeople as well.

12 You said earlier that, I believe,  
13 although some others were saying that the burden of  
14 showing specific adverse effects could not be met,  
15 it can be met. And I understand that this might be  
16 a statement against self-interest or something, but  
17 I'm going to ask the question anyway.

18 Could you tell me how the burden might  
19 be -- how might one show adverse effects? Just for  
20 purposes of understanding.

21 MR. METALITZ: Well, I can give one  
22 example that may be helpful in that regard. If the  
23 library witnesses told you that they had to  
24 circumvent access controls in order to serve their  
25 patrons, and that was the only alternative that they

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 had. And they were doing it on a daily basis, and  
2 that there was a link to the particular non-  
3 infringing use that they would otherwise be unable  
4 to do. Certainly that would be stronger evidence  
5 than what they've come forward with so far,  
6 particularly at this juncture.

7           You know, in one sense the proponents of  
8 the exception do have a tougher burden now, because  
9 the prohibition hasn't gone into effect. So you  
10 can't say that anyone has been adversely affected by  
11 it yet, at least within the scope of that  
12 prohibition. But you could, in theory, have  
13 evidence that shows the likelihood of an adverse  
14 impact, which was that today this was a necessity, a  
15 central element of the way that libraries did  
16 business. And that if they had to stop doing it on  
17 October 28, 2000, XYZ effects would occur.

18           I'm disagreeing with the statements that  
19 you heard that said that basically Congress has sent  
20 you on a fool's errand here, and this burden could  
21 never be met. I don't think Congress did send you  
22 on a fool's errand, I think the burden could be met  
23 if the evidence were there. But it should be  
24 brought forward. I don't think it has been met, but  
25 I don't think it's impossible.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MS. DOUGLASS: I'm trying to think of a  
2 line between adverse effect and mere inconvenience.  
3 And I'm trying to place, at least, something on one  
4 side or the other. And I'm thinking of a situation  
5 where a library can either use a digitally-encrypted  
6 -- circumvent a digitally-encrypted work, or can go  
7 to 12 different other sources and get that same  
8 material. Would that be an adverse effect or would  
9 that be an inconvenience? Or is it harder than  
10 that?

11 MR. METALITZ: Well, I think it is  
12 difficult to draw the bright line. The examples  
13 that have been given about people having to come in  
14 late at night to get access because there is a  
15 limitation on the number of simultaneous users. I'm  
16 not sure that would be an adverse effect at all, but  
17 if it is, it belongs in the mere inconvenience  
18 category.

19 The issue of availability of  
20 alternatives is an important issue -- and I think  
21 it's the one you've raised. It doesn't have to be  
22 complete substitutability. I think the fact that it  
23 is more inconvenient to assemble the material from  
24 other sources, rather than to decrypt it -- that  
25 could be in the category of mere inconvenience.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           I guess the question I would ask in that  
2 situation is why is licensed access unavailable? Or  
3 did the library simply choose, for whatever reason -  
4 - and it could be a very good reason -- not to  
5 license access to that material, or to stop  
6 licensing access to that material.

7           I mean, as a consequence of that it may  
8 become more inconvenient for them to serve certain  
9 users. But I think that's the result, certainly not  
10 of Section 1201(a)(1) and not even of the use of  
11 access controls. It's really a consequence of a  
12 decision the library has made, juggling its  
13 priorities and deciding which users it will give  
14 priority to, basically.

15           MS. DOUGLASS: Again, for purposes of  
16 understanding. I'm wondering if it could be said  
17 that anticircumvention amounts to a per se  
18 imposition of liability for non-infringing use. And  
19 if that's not correct, why not? And if it is  
20 correct, why?

21           MR. METALITZ: Well, the cause of action  
22 for infringement and the cause of action for a  
23 violation of anticircumvention prohibitions are two  
24 separate claims. Two separate causes of action.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   So, it's certainly true that someone  
2 could be liable for a violation of Section 1201  
3 without being liable for copyright infringement.  
4 And we've already seen examples of that in the cases  
5 that have come up under 1201(a)(2) and (b)(1). They  
6 may or may not involve copyright infringement, but  
7 it's an independent cause of action. I don't know  
8 if that's responsive to your question.

9                   MS. DOUGLASS: I think it is. Thank  
10 you.

11                   MR. CARSON: Steve, I'd like to get your  
12 reaction to one example that was brought up this  
13 morning. Let's assume it's November 1st. I happen  
14 to have a subscription otherwise Lexis, I have a  
15 Lexis ID. Rachel doesn't. She wants to do some  
16 legal research, so I give her my ID and she uses it.  
17 Has she violated Section 1201(a)?

18                   MR. METALITZ: Has she violated it by  
19 using your, or have you violated it by giving it to  
20 her?

21                   MR. CARSON: Well, have either of us  
22 violated it? Is that circumvention of a  
23 technological measure that controls access?

24                   MR. METALITZ: I mean, she's using your  
25 password presumably with your permission.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. CARSON: But certainly not with  
2 Lexis' permission, right?

3                   MR. METALITZ: Right. And it certainly  
4 -- let's assume. I don't know, but let's assume  
5 it's a violation of the Lexis license agreement  
6 which it was the day before October 28th. I think  
7 that's probably how that issue would be resolved.

8                   Is it a -- it's a question of whether  
9 she is circumventing an access control measure, and  
10 a password often has that role.

11                  MR. CARSON: So I gather what you're  
12 saying is that if an unauthorized person uses an  
13 authorized password, that is a violation of the  
14 anticircumvention provision?

15                  MR. METALITZ: I don't know that it  
16 would be. Because I think you'd have to see what  
17 the apparent authority of the person who gave the  
18 password was. You get into those agency questions.  
19 But if you're saying could it be a violation, yes,  
20 it could be.

21                  MR. CARSON: Okay. Can you help me out  
22 by letting me know what the purpose of having this  
23 rulemaking is? I'm not saying what are we supposed  
24 to be doing, but what is the purpose for having this  
25 rulemaking?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. METALITZ: I think the purpose for  
2 having the rulemaking is that while Congress had an  
3 expectation of how things would evolve, they didn't  
4 have complete certainty about how the use of  
5 technologies and online digital technologies would  
6 evolve. How the marketplace would evolve.

7                   And although they expected -- at least  
8 the House Manager Report said they thought -- the  
9 likeliest outcome would be that the use of  
10 technological measures backed up by Section  
11 1201(a)(1) and the other 1201 prohibitions would  
12 lead to greater availability, greater access to  
13 material for non-infringing, that it was possible  
14 that that would not happen.

15                   So I think the purpose of it is Congress  
16 built in a safety valve into this system, and your  
17 job is to see whether there is, in fact, steam  
18 passing through that safety valve.                   But  
19 it's got to be pretty hot before you can blow the  
20 whistle. And I'm about to crash my metaphor here,  
21 but I think the safety valve function is what  
22 Congress asked you to perform. I'm not sure if that  
23 answers your question.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433   WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701   www.nealrgross.com

1                   MR. CARSON: Well, it's an answer and  
2 it's a good answer. I'm not sure it totally answers  
3 what I was trying to get at.

4                   MR. METALITZ: Well, try again.

5                   MR. CARSON: Well, if we were to  
6 recommend that a particular class be exempt, what  
7 would we be trying to accomplish, or who would we be  
8 trying to help by doing that?

9                   MR. METALITZ: I think you would be  
10 trying to help the end-users who, if you found such  
11 a class, would in the absence of your action be  
12 substantially adversely impacted in their ability to  
13 make non-infringing uses for that particular class  
14 of works.

15                   So I think you have to look at the end-  
16 user. As I said in my statement, I think that's on  
17 whose behalf this rulemaking is proceeding. I think  
18 at the same time you obviously have to take into  
19 account other factors -- as I said, it's a net  
20 calculation.

21                   And you have to take into account what  
22 are the ways in which the use of technological  
23 control measures, backed up by this legal provision  
24 have increased availability, have increased access.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433   WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701   www.nealrgross.com

1 So you have to take into account those interests as  
2 well.

3 But you're looking at the user who is  
4 substantially adversely impacted in his ability to  
5 make non-infringing uses. That's kind of the litmus  
6 test.

7 MR. CARSON: Okay. Now, I think you've  
8 said in either your oral or your written testimony,  
9 and maybe both, that in defining a class of works  
10 for purposes of this rulemaking, we really can't  
11 include in the definition the type of user who we're  
12 thinking of. Is that accurate?

13 MR. METALITZ: Well, it certainly can't  
14 be determined based on that. Such as the proposals  
15 that it should be any type of work that is marketed  
16 to libraries, for example.

17 MR. CARSON: Okay, fair enough. But  
18 let's go back to an example I gave you a little  
19 while ago. Let's say motion pictures on DVDs.  
20 Assuming the case were made that there were a  
21 problem there, would it be a legitimate class to  
22 say, "We're not going to exempt motion pictures on  
23 DVDs as such as a class. But we are going to exempt  
24 motion pictures on DVDs when used by film school  
25 professors."

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. METALITZ: I think that would be  
2 very questionable under this scheme, because  
3 Congress asked you to look at particular classes of  
4 works. I would hesitate to say that you can't make  
5 any reference to the type of use. But you have to  
6 define a particular class of works. And Congress  
7 did not exactly tell you how to do that. But it  
8 certainly didn't tell you to define a particular  
9 class of privileged users.

10                   At one point it was going to do that.  
11 Originally this rulemaking proceeding was to look at  
12 whether 501(c)(3), (4) and (6) organizations and  
13 people who had initial lawful access, and some other  
14 specified categories of users were being adversely  
15 impacted. That's not where this ended up.  
16 It ended up with a definition of a particular class  
17 of works.

18                   MR. CARSON: Well, then, where we seem  
19 to end up with your interpretation, having rejected  
20 the interpretation in Subparagraph D that Rachel was  
21 discussing with you, is that we have a very blunt  
22 instrument indeed to use to deal with problems  
23 caused by the anticircumvention provision.

24                   We can't tailor the class to the  
25 problem. We simply have to find that if there are

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 some users, maybe a minority of users of a work who  
2 have serious problems with this particular kind of  
3 work, we've got to exempt that class for everyone.  
4 Does that make any sense at all?

5 MR. METALITZ: Well, I don't know that  
6 your tool is quite that blunt. Because, again, I  
7 think you have some flexibility in how you define a  
8 particular class of work. But I think by directing  
9 you to make a net determination to take into account  
10 the positive aspects of the use of access control  
11 measures, Congress did intend that there might be  
12 some adverse impacts that would be counterbalanced  
13 by positive impacts.

14 Even if there were some adverse impacts,  
15 that wouldn't by itself justify finding a particular  
16 class of works. You have to do a net calculation.  
17 It's in the House Manager's Report and elsewhere.  
18 It's a net calculation.

19 MR. CARSON: I don't think you addressed  
20 it today, but certainly in your written comments you  
21 spent some time talking about the DVD issue and so  
22 on. This calls for a yes or no answer. Do you have  
23 thoughts you might want to share with us on that  
24 issue today?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MR. METALITZ: No, I think I'll leave  
2 that to the experts that you're about to hear from.

3 MR. CARSON: All right. I was going to  
4 ask, but I think you may have answered it. Whether  
5 it makes sense to have you hang around for the Q and  
6 A on the DVD issue. But am I hearing that you don't  
7 think you can contribute anything beyond what --

8 MR. METALITZ: I'd be glad to. I'm at  
9 your disposal.

10 MR. CARSON: Okay. That's all I have.

11 MS. PETERS: Okay. I don't have any  
12 additional questions. Thank you very much, Mr.  
13 Metalitz. And we'll now go to our last panel.

14 All right. As we go to our last panel  
15 we're going to start with you, Ms. Gross. Thank  
16 you.

17 MS. GROSS: Thank you. The Electronic  
18 Frontier Foundation appreciates this opportunity to  
19 testify regarding the adverse effects on the  
20 prohibition against circumvention of technological  
21 protections enacted by the DMCA.

22 DVD technology causes an adverse effect  
23 on people's ability to make non-infringing uses of  
24 copyrighted works, and should therefore be ruled  
25 exempt from the DMCA's circumvention ban. The

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 licensing terms imposed on DVD technology prevent  
2 player manufacturers from offering people the  
3 ability to bypass the region codes. The same terms  
4 prevent players from making non-infringing copies on  
5 traditional VHS tapes or computer hard drives for  
6 personal or educational use.

7           People who have attempted to eliminate  
8 these restrictions by making competing DVD players  
9 from legitimate reverse engineering, rather than by  
10 signing a license, have been sued and enjoined under  
11 the DMCA by major movie studios. The content  
12 scrambling system, CSS, is deliberately designed to  
13 prevent legitimate purchasers from being able to  
14 view their own purchased movies.

15           The region coding scheme used by DVDs  
16 prevents individual U.S. residents who purchase DVD  
17 movies from anywhere else in the world from simply  
18 viewing these movies on DVD players sold in the  
19 United States. This diminishes the ability of these  
20 individuals to use copyrighted works in ways that  
21 are otherwise lawful.

22           In other words, the DMCA is being used  
23 to prevent people from watching the movies they own  
24 on the machines that they own.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The adverse effect impact on persons  
2 outside the U.S. is even greater. A large fraction  
3 of the world's movies are created by U.S. movie  
4 studios in the U.S., and released first on DVD in  
5 the U.S. At that time, persons anywhere in the  
6 world are free to purchase these DVDs from U.S.  
7 retailers or wholesalers.

8           However, when they arrive the CSS  
9 technical protection measures prevent them from  
10 playing. Months later, some of these movies are re-  
11 released on DVDs coded for other regions. These re-  
12 releases are sold at higher prices than the original  
13 U.S. release, particularly in Europe. This delays  
14 and diminishes the ability of the entire world's  
15 population to use these copyrighted works in ways  
16 that are otherwise lawful.           DVDs using region  
17 coding serve as a technological restraint on the  
18 global trade in copyrighted movies. The leading UK  
19 grocery chain, Tesco, started selling discount DVD  
20 machines in February of 2000. By mid-February they  
21 were selling tens of thousands of players from 400  
22 stores, "once Internet sites and electrical  
23 magazines showed customers how to change the player  
24 to recognize discs from around the world."

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           Tesco's press release mentions their  
2 letter to Warner Home Video "Calling for an end to  
3 the 'unnecessary practice' of zoning -- which uses  
4 technology to prevent customers from buying DVD  
5 discs from around the world to play on machines in  
6 the UK. The letter goes on to say that Tesco  
7 believes "This is against the spirit of free  
8 competition and potentially a barrier to trade."  
9 Their World Sourcing Director, Christine Cross,  
10 said, "If we find a practice that we believe is  
11 keeping prices high -- we'll fight to change it so  
12 prices come down."

13           The licensing organization that controls  
14 DVD technology, the DVD Copy Control Association,  
15 has taken steps to exterminate this supply of  
16 'region free' players. Its FAQ says, "In cases  
17 where DVD-CCA learns of such products, immediate  
18 action is taken through the manufacturer to have the  
19 product corrected to conform with the CSS license."

20           Indeed, it enforced a contract term on  
21 December 31, 1999 that eliminated its licensees'  
22 ability to sell computer DVD drives whose region  
23 controls were implemented in software.

24           Millions of users of DVD technology have been  
25 adversely affected in their ability to make non-

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 infringing uses of copyrighted works. The 'region  
2 coding' scheme prevents virtually every commercial  
3 DVD from being playable in most regions of the  
4 world, raising the prices and reducing the  
5 availability of works to legitimate buyers. This  
6 has an adverse effect on the ability of buyers to  
7 simply view a work which they have purchased -- the  
8 most non-infringing use possible.

9           CSS, together with the web of laws and  
10 contracts around it also eliminate the individual's  
11 ability to make non-infringing copies of DVD images.  
12 Fritz Attaway, MPAA's Washington General Counsel,  
13 declared under oath, "Under the terms of the CSS  
14 license, such players may not enable the user to  
15 make a digital copy of a DVD movie." The  
16 restriction is imposed by contracts, implemented by  
17 technology and enforced by DMCA lawsuits.

18           There is no balance to it. It does not  
19 follow the boundaries of the copyright law.  
20 Professors are unable to make excerpts to show their  
21 classes. Parents are unable to make VHS copies for  
22 their kids' VCRs. Programmers and artists are  
23 unable to manipulate the images with their own  
24 software. The CSS's blanket prohibition of copies  
25 and excerpts throws the baby out with the bath

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 water. CSS prohibits all fair use copying, as well  
2 as all illicit copying. It prohibits all copying.

3 Congress expressed its clear intent in  
4 Section 1201(c)(1) of the DMCA by stating that  
5 "Nothing in this section shall affect rights,  
6 remedies, limitations or defenses to copyright  
7 infringement, including fair use, under this title."

8 According to the DMCA's plain wording,  
9 the traditional limitations to the copyright  
10 holders' exclusive rights shall remain in the  
11 digital realm. Congress' choice of the word "shall"  
12 indicates in the intention is not permissive or  
13 optional at the choice of the copyright holder. But  
14 rather a mandatory requirement that balance and  
15 longstanding traditional doctrines such as fair use  
16 and the First Sale Rule continue to have meaning in  
17 the digital paradigm.

18 There is no debate that Congress  
19 intended balance in the DMCA and preservation of  
20 traditional copyright principles in the digital  
21 world. Congress recognized the inherent dangers in  
22 enacting a circumvention ban and instructed this  
23 body to anticipate adverse effects and rule  
24 additional classes exempt from the general ban as a  
25 remedy.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           As the U.S. Supreme Court has explained,  
2 fair use serves as a First Amendment safety valve  
3 within copyright law in Harper & Row, Publishers,  
4 1985. Copyright law's fair use privilege fulfills  
5 its constitutional purpose by allowing individuals  
6 to copy works for socially important reasons without  
7 the permission of the author.

8           Thus, granting perfect control to  
9 copyright holders would be constitutionally  
10 impermissible. This rulemaking is charged with  
11 effectuating the DMCA in such a way that it does not  
12 violate the spirit of the constitutional limitations  
13 placed on copyright. To find otherwise would allow  
14 the DMCA to swallow fair use in clear contradiction  
15 to Congress' plain intent in Section 1201(c).

16           At a recent conference at Yale Law  
17 School, the MPAA publicly stated that it was the  
18 organization's position that an individual should be  
19 required to obtain a license before making fair use  
20 of a DVD. Clearly, this position cannot withstand  
21 legal sanction.

22           It would be an abuse of intellectual  
23 property law to allow the motion picture industry to  
24 obtain all of the economic benefits of copyright  
25 protection with none of the accompanying social

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 responsibilities. Technological protection systems  
2 such as CSS that prevent the public from exercising  
3 their legitimate rights abuse the copyright bargain  
4 and should be exempt from the general circumvention  
5 ban.

6           EFF is not spending millions of dollars  
7 in court merely to exonerate one or two individuals,  
8 or to enable distribution of a poorly-written  
9 software prototype. We are here to establish the  
10 principle that the anticircumvention provisions  
11 cannot be used to eliminate fair use broadly  
12 throughout society.

13           Nor can it be used to eliminate  
14 competitors who would offer legitimate access and  
15 copying capabilities to a major consumer market.  
16 Several lawmakers verified congressional intent by  
17 insisting that the DMCA does not and is not intended  
18 to overrule the Betamax Supreme Court case.

19           Two years ago, there could have been  
20 some doubt about whether the ill effects of the CSS  
21 system were caused by the existence of the  
22 prohibition against circumvention. Certainly the  
23 movie studios spent a lot of energy lobbying for  
24 these DMCA provisions, but the evidence was  
25 circumstantial.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           This year it is clear. The movie  
2 studios have made a clear and obvious causal  
3 connection in their own briefs, tying their  
4 motivation in building the CSS system to the  
5 technological measures that restrict access to fair  
6 use. And then tying those to the DMCA  
7 anticircumvention statute.

8           The top eight movie studios, they  
9 themselves declared in their initial briefs, "Each  
10 of the Plaintiffs relied on the security provided by  
11 CSS in manufacturing, producing and distributing to  
12 the public copyrighted motion pictures in DVD  
13 format...CSS is a technological measure that (a)  
14 effectively controls access to works protected by  
15 the Copyright Act, and (b) effectively protects  
16 rights of copyright owners to control whether an  
17 end-user can reproduce, manufacture, adapt, publicly  
18 perform and/or distribute unauthorized copies of  
19 their copyrighted works or portions thereof..."

20           Thus, the DMCA encourages technological  
21 solutions in general by enforcing private parties'  
22 use of technological protection measures with legal  
23 sanctions for circumvention and for producing and  
24 distributing products that are aimed at  
25 circumventing protection measures like CSS.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           To be sure, technology provides  
2 opportunity for benefit and abuse on behalf of all  
3 parties to the copyright bargain. Individuals  
4 engaging in piracy for commercial gain abuse  
5 intellectual property and harm society and creators.  
6 Likewise, the imposition of technology such as CSS  
7 onto the public that prevents creative works from  
8 readily passing into the public domain and restricts  
9 people from exercising their fair use rights is  
10 similarly abusive.

11           The use of such abusive systems that do  
12 not uphold their end of the copyright bargain cannot  
13 be backed up by force of law if copyright is to  
14 continue to serve as the engine of free expression.

15           Contrary to the fears expressed by the  
16 publishing industry, it is possible to preserve  
17 constitutional values without destroying the value  
18 behind creative expression. In its justification  
19 for greater control over creative expression, the  
20 industry claims the new-found phenomena of digital  
21 technology leaves copyright holders at the mercy of  
22 massive unchecked piracy.

23           While the industry has loudly overstated  
24 any potential harm it might face resulting from  
25 digital technology, it quietly looks the other way

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 without mentioning the unprecedented power  
2 technology provides to copyright holders to control  
3 access and use over creative expression.

4           The copyright industries' glaringly  
5 self-interested suggestion that this committee  
6 exempt nothing from the circumvention ban ignores  
7 Congress' stated desire that DMCA not effect this  
8 nation's core constitutional values.

9           It is crucial that this committee  
10 consider the longer and societal view in deciding  
11 these important issues. If you don't have the  
12 ability to exercise your rights, then you don't have  
13 rights.

14           There are greater issues at stake than  
15 mere economic interests of a few corporations.  
16 Unencumbered access to information is essential to  
17 knowledge creation, innovation and the democratic  
18 discourse of a free and healthy society. We must  
19 diligently resist the content industry's push to  
20 build a legal system that optimizes our children for  
21 commercial consumption of creative expression at the  
22 expense of their imagination, education and cultural  
23 enrichment.

24           I'd like to address the unfounded fears  
25 expressed by the content industry that any

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 additional exemptions would violate U.S.' WIPO  
2 Treaty obligations. Article 11 of the WIPO  
3 Copyright Treaty provides that, "Contracting parties  
4 shall provide adequate legal protection and  
5 effective legal remedies against the circumvention  
6 of effective technological measures that are used by  
7 authors in connection with the exercise of their  
8 rights under this Treaty or the Berne Convention and  
9 that restrict acts, in respect of their works, which  
10 are not authorized by the authors concerned or  
11 permitted by law."

12                   The DMCA went well beyond what was  
13 agreed to among contracting parties to the Treaty by  
14 granting an additional and completely separate  
15 access right. Thus, any additional exemptions under  
16 that right would have no effect on U.S. treaty  
17 obligations under WIPO. Additionally, the plain  
18 language of the Treaty permits circumvention for  
19 fair use.

20                   The Copyright Office should define an  
21 exempted class as DVD movies. The movie studios  
22 stated in court filings that over one million copies  
23 of such works are sold every week. This is the  
24 class of works currently showing adverse effects.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           It would be disingenuous to designate a  
2 class such as DVD movies protected by a region  
3 coding system. Since consumers have flocked to  
4 hardware and software devices whose region codes can  
5 be disabled, and manufacturers are starting to  
6 rebel, the movie studios might decide to "throw  
7 region coding overboard" in order to save the rest  
8 of their restrictive scheme.

9           A designation that only applied to CSS  
10 works with region coding would still enable them to  
11 suppress competitors whose equipment provides fair  
12 use copying.

13           Similarly, the industry could evade a  
14 ruling against a class such as DVDs protected by CSS  
15 by merely switching to a different but equally  
16 restrictive protection system. An improved CSS-2  
17 system already exists, and the industry is actively  
18 designing stronger ones.

19           Therefore, the entire class of DVD  
20 movies is threatened with adverse effects now, and  
21 in the next three years, and should be exempted from  
22 the anticircumvention provisions of the DMCA.

23           The movie studios stated in court  
24 filings in January that about 4,000 movie titles  
25 have been released in the U.S. on DVD, that over

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 five million DVD players have been sold, and that  
2 over 1 million copies of such works are sold every  
3 week. This is not an issue of "individual cases,"  
4 but a broadly implemented system that impacts all  
5 segments of society.

6 A deliberately-designed inability to play the work  
7 you purchased is no mere inconvenience.

8           In the comments and testimony provided  
9 by the content industry before this proceeding, the  
10 charge continues to surface that no one has supplied  
11 any evidence of actual harm resulting from the use  
12 of such dangerous protection systems we discuss  
13 today. I need not remind the committee of the  
14 hundreds of individuals who submitted comments  
15 complaining about their inability to view or simply  
16 make fair use of DVDs.           Additionally, in  
17 testimony before this committee, CCUM described a  
18 teaching method using DVD that has become  
19 unavailable to educators.

20           It is imperative that this proceeding  
21 recognize that the public's sheer inability to  
22 exercise its legal right with respect to certain  
23 types of works because technological protections  
24 have been applied, is by its mere existence, a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 substantial harm perpetrated against the First  
2 Amendment.

3           As the U.S. Supreme Court stated in  
4 Elrod v. Burns, "The loss of First Amendment  
5 freedoms, even for minimal periods of times  
6 unquestionably constitutes irreparable injury." I  
7 encourage the Librarian to weigh the constitutional  
8 considerations into its determination about the  
9 societal harm.

10           Copyright's goal is to create a world  
11 full of creators with a rich and thriving public  
12 domain where creativity flourishes. In addition to  
13 legal protection designed to enable a market for  
14 works, creators vitally rely upon ready access to  
15 information, including a vibrant public domain and  
16 the ability to engage in a wide range of legitimate  
17 uses including fair use. If copyright is to achieve  
18 its objective, society's true creators must continue  
19 to be allowed to build upon the works of their  
20 ancestors.

21           Because of the demonstrated widespread  
22 adverse impact on non-infringing use and fair use  
23 imposed by their technological restrictions, DVD  
24 movies should be exempt from Section 1201. Thank  
25 you.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MS. PETERS: Thank you, Ms. Gross. Mr.  
2 Marks?

3 MR. MARKS: Thank you. First I'd like  
4 to thank you for the opportunity to testify at this  
5 important hearing. My name is Dean Marks and I am  
6 Senior Counsel, Intellectual Property, for Time  
7 Warner. I appear here today on behalf of Time  
8 Warner and the Motion Picture Association of  
9 America. I would like to make a few general  
10 statements, and then discuss in a bit more detail  
11 the issue of DVD and the CSS protection technology.

12 As a preliminary matter, much has been  
13 written and said in the context of this inquiry that  
14 seems to pit content owners against consumers over  
15 the fair use issue. My company and fellow content  
16 providers not only support the fair use doctrine,  
17 but we rely on it every day.

18 In creating and publishing our movies or  
19 music, we frequently rely on the protections that  
20 fair use provides, for example, to comment or to  
21 parody.

22 From what I have read and heard during  
23 the course of this inquiry, no concrete evidence has  
24 been adduced that any user has been prevented from

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 making non-infringing uses of a work due to the  
2 presence of technological protection measures.

3           Discomfort has been expressed by some  
4 librarians over the terms of certain content  
5 licenses, but this is an issue separate and apart  
6 from whether exceptions to the legal protection of  
7 technical measures should be adopted.

8           Moreover, the potential harms that have  
9 been described are hypothetical and speculative.  
10 Contrast this with the very real evidence of threats  
11 to the rights of copyright owners that arise in  
12 today's digital and Internet environments.

13           On May 10, the New York Times published  
14 an article entitled "The Concept of Copyright Fights  
15 for Internet Survival." The article describes  
16 several new software programs, most notably Freenet,  
17 that have been developed and are used to deprive  
18 copyright owners of the ability to exercise their  
19 rights in the distribution of their works.

20           As stated in the article, the developers  
21 of such programs "express the hope that the clash  
22 over copyright enforcement in cyberspace will  
23 produce a world in which all information is freely  
24 shared." It is that sort of threat that content

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 owners worry about when we speak about the copyright  
2 balance today.

3           These very real threats to the rights of  
4 copyright owners led not only the U.S. Congress, but  
5 also the world community in the WIPO treaties to  
6 determine that technical protection measures used by  
7 copyright owners must be entitled to legal  
8 protection against circumvention.

9           In considering the possibility of any  
10 exception to the Section 1201(a) prohibition, the  
11 Register of Copyrights and the Librarian of Congress  
12 must weigh the lack of evidence of harm to non-  
13 infringing uses with the substantial evidence of  
14 harm to copyright owners that will result from the  
15 weakening of the legal protections afforded to  
16 technical measures.

17           Furthermore, there's an underlying  
18 assumption of many -- not all, but many of the  
19 remarks made in the course of this inquiry is that  
20 technological protection measures will be used to  
21 "take" works away from users, or to deny access. I  
22 strongly believe that this assumption is  
23 fundamentally flawed.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Technological protection measures can actually  
2 facilitate the making of works available to  
3 consumers.

4           We've heard discussions of DVD. DVD is  
5 a concrete example of this proposition. My company  
6 would not have released its motion pictures on the  
7 DVD format if DVD did not incorporate technological  
8 protection measures. The risk of unauthorized  
9 reproduction and distribution of our content in the  
10 digital format without protection would simply be  
11 too great. Without the content scramble system  
12 there simply would not be DVDs in the market today.

13           The DVD format has permitted users to  
14 view and own copies of motion pictures in a new and  
15 desirable digital format. This is why DVD has  
16 become so popular. Why, in fact, are a million DVDs  
17 sold each week? Because it's a popular and  
18 consumer-friendly format.

19           Further, DVD has allowed users for the  
20 first time to play high quality copies of motion  
21 pictures on their personal computers. These new  
22 uses of motion picture content have been made  
23 economically possible due to the development and  
24 implementation of technical measures, including  
25 access controls.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           To now argue that these technological  
2 protection measures should be subject to  
3 circumvention because DVDs may not be playable on  
4 all personal computers misses the point that if the  
5 integrity of technological protection measures are  
6 not legally protected, content owners will be  
7 reluctant to make their works available in these new  
8 formats in the first place.

9           A clear real-life example is DVD-Audio.  
10 Due to the recent compromise of CSS and the fact  
11 that technological protection for DVD-Audio had been  
12 developed and premised on CSS, music companies have  
13 delayed indefinitely the launch of the DVD-Audio  
14 format. The result is that consumers have been  
15 deprived of a new music format.

16           Thus, circumvention of technical  
17 measures, whether sanctioned through this process or  
18 accomplished in violation of law, can seriously  
19 diminish the general public benefit.

20           I would like to turn and pick up on a  
21 point made earlier today by Frederick Weingarten. I  
22 agree with Mr. Weingarten that the development and  
23 implementation of technological protection measures  
24 can be a win/win situation for both content owners  
25 and users.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           For example, technological protection  
2 measures are under development that would permit  
3 users to make a copy of certain pay television  
4 programs that are otherwise protected by encryption  
5 and other technical measures. In the context of the  
6 copy protection work underway in the Secure Digital  
7 Music Initiative, all participating parties have  
8 agreed that consumers who purchase music protected  
9 by technical measures should be able to engage in  
10 certain levels of copying for private use.

11           Thus, the development and implementation  
12 of technical measures that inhibit massive  
13 unauthorized copying and distribution, but permit  
14 limited consumer copying opportunities, will  
15 actually facilitate the making available of works to  
16 more consumers in more formats, and their ability to  
17 make non-infringing uses.

18           These technologies may also make it  
19 easier for content owners to make their works  
20 available to libraries in digital format, and, in  
21 turn, for libraries to make these works available to  
22 their users without undue risk of economic harm to  
23 the owners due to unauthorized reproduction,  
24 transmission and re-distribution.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The development and implementation of  
2 technical measures is in its infancy in the digital  
3 world, particularly with respect to the Internet.  
4 We should give some breathing room for the measures  
5 to be developed and implemented before we seek to  
6 undercut their legal protection.

7           It has been mentioned by prior  
8 witnesses, including Paul Hughes from Adobe this  
9 morning, and Bernard Sorkin from Time Warner at the  
10 Washington hearing, that content providers must be  
11 mindful of the desires of consumers. We are in the  
12 business of selling our content to the public, and  
13 we cannot survive as an industry if we do not widely  
14 distribute our works to consumers.

15           Because of this imperative, it is highly  
16 unlikely that we will employ technical measures that  
17 will be seriously detrimental to the ability of our  
18 consumers to make non-infringing uses. But this is  
19 only part of the answer, and you don't need to  
20 simply trust us.

21           As a practical matter, content owners  
22 cannot unilaterally develop and implement technical  
23 measures of their own choosing. Why is this? Well,  
24 sound recordings and audio/visual works can only be  
25 enjoyed by the use of receiving and playback devices

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 such as television sets, CD or record players,  
2 videocassette players, personal computers, et  
3 cetera.

4                   Therefore, we as content owners cannot  
5 simply apply technical measures to our works that  
6 will cause all receiving and playback devices to be  
7 unable to play our works. If we were to do this, we  
8 would quickly be out of business.

9                   Equally important, however, the goal of  
10 protecting works cannot be achieved if receiving,  
11 playback and recording devices do not recognize and  
12 respond to the technical measures that we seek to  
13 incorporate in our works, but they simply ignore  
14 them.

15                   So, to work properly, copy protection  
16 technologies must be bilateral. The technologies  
17 applied by content owners need to function with  
18 consumer electronics and computer devices. This  
19 bilateral requirement means that protection measures  
20 are not simply a matter of technological innovation.  
21 And they are not simply a matter of fulfilling a  
22 list of demands by content owners.

23                   Rather, copy protection technologies  
24 such as the CSS system for DVD require a high level  
25 of consensus among the content industry and the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 consumer electronics industry and computer industry.  
2 This consensus requirement means that access control  
3 and copy protection structures, and the use of  
4 technical measures, are heavily negotiated across  
5 industries.  
6 And, indeed, the negotiations over the CSS system  
7 spanned at least two years and possibly longer than  
8 that.

9           Because the consumer electronics and  
10 computer industries have strong vested interests in  
11 ensuring that their devices permit users wide  
12 latitude to use copyrighted works, the copy  
13 protection structures and technologies that are, in  
14 fact, being developed and implemented in the area of  
15 audio/visual and musical works fully recognize user  
16 concerns.

17           Finally, this inquiry is not a one-shot  
18 deal. At the moment it seems clear that there has  
19 been no evidence presented of any adverse effect,  
20 and hence it seems premature for any exceptions to  
21 Section 1201(a) to be enacted. The fears expressed  
22 that the DMCA and the anticircumvention provisions  
23 will harm users or the fair use doctrine have not  
24 materialized, and indeed these fears may never come  
25 to pass.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           If any of the "parade of horrors" that  
2 have been described by some of the witnesses  
3 materialize in the future, then the Register and the  
4 Librarian will have the opportunity to consider  
5 appropriate remedies in future rulemaking  
6 procedures. At the moment, frankly, this exercise  
7 appears to be a case of attempting to devise a  
8 solution in search of a problem.

9           I now want to turn specifically to the  
10 case of DVD and CSS. In several of the comments  
11 received by the Copyright Office, reference was made  
12 to DVDs and the alleged inability of users of the  
13 Linux operating system to play DVDs on their  
14 computers.

15           Much confusion, I would even say  
16 misconception and misinformation, surrounds the  
17 issue of DVD, CSS and Linux. First, there is no  
18 legal or technical barrier to building an open  
19 source interface between the Linux operating system  
20 and a CSS compliant application that will play DVDs  
21 encrypted with CSS on the Linux system.

22           Second, the CSS technology and  
23 manufacturer's license necessary to build any CSS  
24 compliant application or device is available on a  
25 non-discriminatory basis. The current license

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 requires a one-time fee of \$10,000. It is expected  
2 in the future that an annual fee of \$5,000 will also  
3 be assessed. These payments are administrative  
4 fees, the license itself is royalty free.

5           None of the technical or legal  
6 conditions of the CSS license prevent implementation  
7 in the Linux environment. And indeed, two CSS  
8 licensees have in fact developed CSS implementations  
9 for the Linux operating system. One, called Sigma  
10 Systems, is hardware-based and another -- whose name  
11 I unfortunately don't have with me -- is software-  
12 based. But both of these implementations are  
13 available on the market.

14           It is true that most software  
15 applications that permit the playback of DVDs are  
16 designed for the Windows operating system. But this  
17 is simply because of market-driven decisions on the  
18 part of software developers who seek to develop and  
19 sell applications for the prevailing operating  
20 system.

21           Neither movie studios nor the licensors  
22 of the CSS technology have sought to prevent the  
23 development of the applications in any other  
24 platforms, including Linux. Indeed, much to the  
25 contrary, the film studios have a strong interest in

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the development of as many CSS licensed and  
2 compliant playback devices as possible, be they  
3 consumer electronic players, DVD drives for  
4 computers, software programs or other platforms,  
5 such as the recently introduced Sony PlayStation 2.  
6 The greater the number and variety of CSS compliant  
7 playback devices available in the market, the  
8 greater the demand will be, hopefully, for DVDs that  
9 carry our content.

10           Some consumers who have been unable to  
11 play DVDs on their Linux operating system have  
12 argued that they should be permitted to circumvent  
13 the CSS encryption technology in order to gain  
14 access to the content of the DVDs that they have  
15 purchased. I want to make clear from the outset  
16 that my discussion of that particular argument in  
17 this hearing is separate from the ongoing litigation  
18 in the Reimerdes case, commonly known as the DeCSS  
19 case.

20           That case involves violations of Section  
21 1201(a)(2) -- the prohibitions concerning  
22 circumvention devices, products or services and  
23 therefore that case is not directly relevant to the  
24 issue at hand in this hearing, namely Section  
25 1201(a)(1) and the prohibition on circumvention

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 conduct. Because the Reimerdes litigation is  
2 ongoing and because my company is a Plaintiff in  
3 that litigation, and because understand that I have  
4 recently been noticed for a deposition in that  
5 litigation, it is inappropriate for me to discuss  
6 that case.

7                   With respect to the argument for an  
8 exemption on the prohibition of circumvention  
9 conduct for purposes of playing DVD discs on the  
10 Linux platform, I respond as follows:

11                   First, as the number of Linux users  
12 grows, the market will naturally fill the demand for  
13 CSS compliant applications that will play DVDs on  
14 Linux. As mentioned above, two companies already  
15 offer DVD playback applications for the Linux  
16 operating system. Hence, adoption of a  
17 circumvention exemption is neither justified nor  
18 necessary.

19                   Second, a consumer who purchases a copy  
20 of a work but does not have the proper equipment to  
21 play back the work does not, in my view, entitle the  
22 consumer to circumvent access control protection  
23 measures.

24                   I want to take an example here. A  
25 consumer who purchased a subscription to HBO -- Home

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Box Office pay television service -- soon after its  
2 launch, but did not own, the consumer did not own a  
3 television set that could accommodate a cable set  
4 top box necessary to descramble the encrypted HBO  
5 signal, would not have been entitled to circumvent  
6 the encryption on the HBO signal. That is, he would  
7 have not been entitled, as a legal matter.

8           Encryption television signals are  
9 protected by various sections of the Communications  
10 Act. None of these sections provide for exceptions  
11 for users to decrypt signals without the  
12 authorization of the broadcaster. We have all been  
13 living with this legal regime for more than a decade  
14 with no difficulties, legal or otherwise.

15           Mindful of this longstanding precedent  
16 in the realm of encrypted broadcasts, no exemption  
17 to the prohibition of circumvention of access  
18 control technology appears justified merely to  
19 accommodate users who lack playback equipment that  
20 is readily available in the market.

21           Third, copyright owners are applying  
22 technical protection measures today, not simply to  
23 ensure proper payment for access to a work, but also  
24 to manage the exponentially increasing risks of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 subsequent unauthorized reproduction and re-  
2 distribution posed by the digital environment.

3           The danger of permitting circumvention  
4 to facilitate an individual's access to a work is  
5 that such circumvention will also likely undermine  
6 protections against unauthorized copying and  
7 transmission, such as Internet retransmission.  
8 Once circumvention is permitted, there is no  
9 practical manner -- and likely no technical way --  
10 to ensure that subsequent uses of the work will be  
11 non-infringing.

12           For example, if circumvention of CSS  
13 were allowed solely to permit access to content on  
14 DVDs to Linux users for home viewing, such  
15 circumvention would likely involve a copy of the  
16 content being made in the hard drive of the Linux  
17 user's computer. Once a copy is readily available  
18 in the hard drive, it is easily subject to massive  
19 replication and distribution for unlimited purposes.

20           Such risks are not speculative.  
21 Napster, iCrave, Gnutella, MyMP3 and Freenet all  
22 stand as very real examples of the ease with which  
23 works protected by copyright are subject to enormous  
24 unauthorized copying and redistribution once such  
25 works reside on the hard drive of a computer.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   These very real risks militate against  
2 allowing exceptions to the prohibition on  
3 circumvention conduct. If any cases of adverse  
4 impact on non-infringing uses of works are  
5 demonstrated in the future, then that would be the  
6 time to discuss alternative remedies. An exception  
7 to the prohibition on circumvention conduct should  
8 be considered only as a remedy of last resort.  
9 Thank you.

10                   I also wanted to express my response  
11 concerning regional coding. But I can do that now,  
12 or wait for the question period, if you would like.  
13 Better to do it now?

14                   There's been some discussion of the  
15 regional coding issues, and how regional coding is  
16 used or misused by content providers to prevent  
17 users around the world from playing DVDs. For  
18 example, a DVD disc, a Region 1 disc that might be  
19 purchased in the U.S. And I want to make a few  
20 remarks about that.

21                   First of all, consumer electronics  
22 audiovisual equipment has been developed with a  
23 certain degree of regionalization. There are  
24 different formats in different countries of the  
25 world. The U.S. is NTSC format, Europe is PAL

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 format. If someone were to buy a videocassette that  
2 had been manufactured -- straight old analog  
3 videocassette that had been manufactured in the  
4 U.S., it would be in the NTSC format.

5                   That videocassette would not be playable  
6 in Europe on PAL format televisions and  
7 videocassette players. This situation has existed  
8 since the introduction of video in the early or mid-  
9 80s with no complaint. So I find it a bit  
10 interesting that now this issue of regional coding  
11 has become such a hot button for certain  
12 communities.

13                   Second, why do movie studios impose  
14 regional coding in the first place? It has to do  
15 with the way the economics of the film business  
16 work. Films are very, very expensive to produce,  
17 and they become increasingly expensive to produce as  
18 the years go by. Many people assume that the  
19 revenues from theatrical distribution are the main  
20 source of economic return from movie production.  
21 That, in fact, is not the case.

22                   As of today, the receipts from  
23 theatrical distribution usually, on average, account  
24 for only 20 to 25 percent of the gross revenues  
25 earned by a motion picture. The balance of those

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 revenues are earned by what have typically been  
2 referred to as ancillary markets. But now they are,  
3 frankly, primary markets because they account for  
4 the lion's share of the revenue.

5           These markets include home video, pay-  
6 per-view television, pay television and over the air  
7 free broadcast. The reason why movie studios are  
8 concerned about regional coding is that it is very,  
9 very expensive to produce theatrical prints. And  
10 therefore, unlike the music business, which  
11 currently tends to release new works on a worldwide  
12 basis -- the new Madonna CD tends to be released all  
13 over the world on the same date -- it is not really  
14 economically practicable for movie studios to do so,  
15 due to the enormous costs of producing prints, and  
16 the costs involved in dubbing or translating of the  
17 prints.

18           Added onto that are just regional habits  
19 that we try to take account of. Summer is a big  
20 movie-going season in the United States. Summer is  
21 a very low season for movie-going in Mediterranean  
22 countries, particularly Italy, where even today a  
23 lot of the cinemas are not air-conditioned.

24           So therefore if we have a blockbuster  
25 that we want to release in the summer in the United

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 States, we don't necessarily want to release it in  
2 the summer in Italy. The importance of having to  
3 exploit the different windows of exploitation of  
4 theatrical, video, pay-per-view, pay, free broadcast  
5 means that we are concerned that if we released  
6 region-free DVDs in the United States six months  
7 after theatrical release in the United States, and  
8 those DVDs were widely available in Italy where the  
9 movie had not even been theatrically released, that  
10 the impact would be to cannibalize the theatrical  
11 release. And take away from the potential economic  
12 return of the theatrical release.

13 I wanted to lay this out, as part of the  
14 explanation as to why we use regional coding in the  
15 DVD system.

16 Finally, I just wanted to turn to some  
17 of the fair use and First Amendment questions. It  
18 seemed to me that uses described by Ms. Gross were,  
19 in large part, not the typical fair uses for  
20 education or comment, criticism, parody, but were  
21 consumptive uses. Making copies for other people,  
22 or copies for your children.

23 I don't understand how protecting  
24 expressive works from piracy with the use of  
25 technological measures adversely affects free

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 expression, dissemination of knowledge or creation.  
2 The wider dissemination of works, in fact, that  
3 technological protection measures can afford, in my  
4 view, furthers the goal of spreading culture and  
5 knowledge.

6           The fact that one million DVD movies are  
7 sold each week indicates that these works are  
8 getting into the hands of users at a tremendous  
9 rate. And not that users are somehow being denied  
10 or deprived of access or to the works. If DVDs were  
11 not readily playable, it is difficult to understand  
12 how millions and millions of DVDs could be sold.

13           Similarly, I fail to see how the CSS  
14 system deprives any individual of his or her First  
15 Amendment rights. And I look forward to answering  
16 your questions. Thank you very much.

17           MS. PETERS: Thank you, Mr. Marks. Mr.  
18 Riley?

19           MR. RUSSELL: Russell.

20           MS. PETERS: Russell, excuse me.

21           MR. RUSSELL: I'd like to introduce  
22 myself. My name is Riley Russell. I am the Vice  
23 President of Legal Affairs at Sony Computer  
24 Entertainment America. I am also accompanied by Mr.  
25 Morton David Goldberg, of Cowan, Liebowitz & Latman.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           I think it's worth, very briefly -- as I  
2 look around the room and I don't see any 15-year-  
3 olds -- at least to describe very quickly what the  
4 PlayStation is. And that is a video game device  
5 that, of course, plays video games.

6           Along with the Sony PlayStation, Sony  
7 Computer Entertainment markets and sells over 50  
8 video game products and other services. Along with  
9 that there are over 350 independent video game  
10 publishers or developers licensed by SCEA who  
11 produce approximately 300 games a year for the Sony  
12 PlayStation system. The independent developers  
13 employ in excess of 6,000 people, most of them in  
14 the United States.

15           I would like to thank the Copyright  
16 Office for the opportunity to testify in this  
17 rulemaking proceeding, which deals with what I  
18 believe is a critical issue to the copyright  
19 industries and their customers in the digital age.  
20 This rulemaking poses the narrow question of whether  
21 there are particular classes of copyrighted works  
22 whose users have been, or in the next three years  
23 are likely to be substantially adversely affected in  
24 their ability to make non-infringing use of the  
25 works if the class is not exempted from the scope of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Section 1201(a)(1)(A). The rulemaking is to focus  
2 on distinct, verifiable and measurable impacts;  
3 speculation, de minimis effects and mere  
4 inconvenience should be disregarded in this inquiry.

5 As you are aware, Congress intended that  
6 the burden of persuasion as to the necessity of any  
7 exemption fall squarely upon the advocates.  
8 Congress, furthermore, had no expectation that in  
9 this proceeding the conditions for any exemption  
10 necessarily would be found to exist. They, in fact,  
11 may not.

12 To the contrary, according to the House  
13 Manager's Report, the absence of any such finding  
14 would indicate that "the digital information  
15 marketplace is developing in the manner which is  
16 most likely to occur, with the availability of  
17 copyrighted materials for lawful uses being  
18 enhanced, not diminished, by the implementation of  
19 technological measures and the establishment of  
20 carefully targeted legal prohibitions against acts  
21 of circumvention." I submit to you that this is  
22 exactly what's happened.

23 As a benchmark, Congress described the  
24 hypothetical scenario under which it "could be  
25 appropriate" to modify Section 1201(a)(1)(A)'s flat

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 prohibition of the circumventing of technological  
2 access controls: one in which the use of  
3 technological access controls might result in less,  
4 rather than more, access to copyrighted materials  
5 because of a confluence of factors including the  
6 adoption of business models to restrict, rather than  
7 maximize, distribution and availability. It goes  
8 without saying that nothing remotely resembling such  
9 a scenario has been shown to exist today, or to be  
10 likely to arise in the next three years. In fact,  
11 experience has shown otherwise.

12           It is telling that, despite the sound  
13 and fury raised in many submissions, few of the  
14 advocates of exemptions responded straightforwardly  
15 to the questions posed in the statute itself and in  
16 the Notice of Inquiry. A number of respondents  
17 would have the Copyright Office overturn or subvert  
18 the DMCA itself. Others concerned themselves with  
19 issues beyond the scope of this inquiry, such as the  
20 DeCSS litigation, or issues unripe for examination,  
21 such as preservation of works in a digital format.

22           In short, Section 1201(a)(1)'s opponents  
23 -- and they're opponents of the statute as Congress  
24 enacted it -- have not identified either distinct,  
25 verifiable and measurable impacts -- actual or

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 prospective -- on lawful use of copyrighted works  
2 caused by the prohibition on circumvention, or a  
3 class of works -- i.e., a "narrow and focused subset  
4 of the broad categories of works of  
5 authorship...identified in Section 102 of the  
6 Copyright Act," which is subject to such an impact.  
7 Accordingly, the advocates of exemption have not  
8 sustained their burden, and Section 1201(a)(1)  
9 should come into effect intact.

10                   The backdrop for and impetus behind the  
11 law under discussion here is, of course, the vastly  
12 altered environment in which copyright owners have  
13 been operating since the advent of digital media and  
14 the Internet. In this brave new digital, networked  
15 world, the traditional arrangements among copyright  
16 owners, copyrighted works, and the consumers of  
17 those works have already been radically transformed  
18 by a single unprecedented fact: every consumer,  
19 with a single touch of a button, is now potentially  
20 a global distributor -- or a receiver -- of an  
21 unlimited number of perfect copies of any  
22 copyrighted work which may come into his or her  
23 possession in digital form. Once distributed, these  
24 copies can no longer be retrieved.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           Much has been said of the importance of  
2 maintaining the traditional balance between the  
3 copyright holders' rights and consumers' privileges.  
4 The WIPO and Congress have acknowledged that  
5 technological access control measures, backed up by  
6 laws prohibiting circumvention, are essential to  
7 doing just that.

8           As Congress implicitly recognized, and  
9 as it should be clear to any observer, it would be  
10 derelict for content owners to release their works  
11 in digital form into this new environment without  
12 availing themselves of every practical means of  
13 protecting those works from unauthorized access.

14           Congress, we recall, mandated that this  
15 proceeding consider the positive effects of these  
16 technological measures on the availability of  
17 copyrighted materials. For SCEA and, we believe,  
18 many other copyright holders large or small, the  
19 availability of effective access control measures  
20 has had far more than a mere "positive effect" on  
21 the ability to make digital works available.

22           In fact, the availability of technical  
23 measures offers to the copyright holders means and  
24 scopes of distribution which were unimaginable just  
25 a few short years ago. For all of us, however,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 effective access control will be a precondition to  
2 the wide dissemination of commercial copyrighted  
3 works in digital form.

4                   While SCEA and other content owners  
5 clearly need the protection of access control  
6 technology in order to release works in digital  
7 form, it is equally clear that technology alone is  
8 not enough. There is not, and there never will be,  
9 such a thing as an un-hackable access control  
10 technology. At least not one that functions  
11 appropriately in the marketplace.

12                   As WIPO and Congress recognized, in  
13 order for access control technology to work  
14 practically in the marketplace for copyright owners  
15 and consumers, it must be supported by laws  
16 prohibiting its circumvention. Otherwise the  
17 copyright holder is no better off than if the work  
18 was distributed without the access control. Such a  
19 tradeoff would result in a far narrower distribution  
20 for most works than currently exist.

21                   The WIPO's Copyright Treaty, like  
22 Section 1201, refers to "effective technological  
23 measures that are used by authors in connection with  
24 the exercise of their rights." Some contend that  
25 once the initial access to a copy of a work has been

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 made, the prohibition on circumvention should no  
2 longer apply -- that the law should protect only a  
3 single "gatekeeper" function for an access control  
4 measure, after which it may be circumvented with  
5 impunity. There is nothing to suggest, however,  
6 that Congress and the WIPO intended such a result,  
7 and the notion makes little sense.

8           Here I speak not only for SCEA, but I  
9 believe for all copyright holders who deserve the  
10 benefit of protection technologies. It is perhaps  
11 the author of modest means, the small publisher, who  
12 may well be best benefitted by these technologies.  
13 He or she may have no other means of enforcing his  
14 or her copyrights in the digital world, and  
15 therefore it is the smaller copyright owners who  
16 require the extra security afforded by strong access  
17 controls.

18           Of course, under copyright law benefit  
19 to the consumer is an ultimate interest. To date,  
20 the consuming public has benefitted immensely from  
21 copyright owners' use of technological access  
22 controls which have been instrumental in permitting  
23 dissemination in digital form of enormous numbers of  
24 works which would otherwise not be available today.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   It's worth pointing out that SCEA, like  
2 most of the copyright holders that you've heard  
3 from, earns its keep by getting its works into the  
4 hands and ears and before the eyes of its paying  
5 customers.

6                   This fundamental characteristic of our  
7 business, and all our businesses, assures that for  
8 the foreseeable future the benefits of access  
9 control technologies, in the form of enhanced  
10 availability of copyrighted works, will continue to  
11 flow to the public. The prospect has been raised  
12 that this most basic business model could someday be  
13 replaced by one based on restriction rather than  
14 dissemination.

15                   SCEA, however, sees no such change on  
16 the horizon, and continues to have a strong  
17 incentive not to risk alienating its customers with  
18 unreasonable or unwieldy restrictions on the use of  
19 SCEA's copyrighted works.

20                   In my industry, we survive on a plug-  
21 and-play mentality. We succeed by satisfying the  
22 consumer with what they want. Access control  
23 measures which include encryption and regional  
24 coding are essential tools in maintaining the high  
25 quality of our copyrighted works, and in controlling

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the nature and quality of the goods and services  
2 that bear our trademarks.

3           Effective access control measures are of  
4 great utility in our ongoing campaign against  
5 counterfeiting and other pirated works with respect  
6 to our products. As such, they allow us to adopt  
7 technologies that help to keep down the price -- and  
8 therefore increase the availability -- of our  
9 products that purchasers of lawful copies, who  
10 ultimately must bear some of the costs of  
11 infringement.

12           Access control measures also help  
13 protect the consumer's interest, as well as our  
14 reputation and good will, by ensuring that  
15 legitimately produced PlayStation video games are  
16 distributed only in those areas of the world where  
17 they are properly licensed.

18           PlayStation games, like products in many  
19 other industries, are produced in multiple versions  
20 tailored, in terms of language and other features,  
21 for use by consumers in particular markets.  
22 Distribution of these games in other, unauthorized  
23 markets will inevitably produce dissatisfied  
24 customers and distributors.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The benefits to consumers will continue  
2 if the anticircumvention provision is allowed to  
3 come into effect unimpaired.

4           As the House Manager's Report pointed  
5 out, the technological measures protected by Section  
6 1201(a) can be deployed to support new ways of  
7 disseminating copyrighted materials to users.

8           Access control technologies enable  
9 copyright owners to offer consumers a wider array of  
10 options tailored more closely to individual needs,  
11 giving each consumer better value, as well as  
12 allowing more consumers to access a given work. The  
13 importance of such flexibility can be illustrated by  
14 an example from today's marketplace.

15           We all know that consumers currently  
16 have the option of purchasing a popular video game,  
17 thereby acquiring the right to an unlimited number  
18 of private performances. They have the right to  
19 dispose of their copy in the marketplace.

20           While a certain number take advantage of this  
21 option, millions more choose instead to spend what  
22 is considerably a more modest sum by purchasing a  
23 narrower set of privileges. By renting the game for  
24 a night or two at their local Blockbuster, or paying

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 for a single performance, for example, in a hotel  
2 room.

3           We also offer promotional discs that are  
4 distributed, often free or for a small fee, that  
5 sometimes give limited access to the players to try  
6 the game before they actually purchase it. All this  
7 is available to us because of our ability to control  
8 access.

9           If the consumer likes the game enough,  
10 he or she may find it worthwhile to purchase a copy  
11 outright rather than repeatedly either rent copies  
12 or pay for views. In many cases the single viewing  
13 or rental suits the customer's needs perfectly and  
14 they're happy. And if the consumer doesn't  
15 particularly like it, at least the consumer only  
16 spent a small sum rather than the cost of the entire  
17 game.

18           What is important is that this variety  
19 of options enables many more consumers to avail  
20 themselves of our work than if only one option were  
21 to exist in the marketplace. It is only through the  
22 application of these effective technological access  
23 controls that this kind of flexibility can be made  
24 available in the digital environment, where perfect

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 copies can be made and circulated around the world  
2 almost instantaneously.

3           Those in this proceeding who have urged  
4 you to make broad blanket exemptions would thwart  
5 the creation of flexible digital-age business  
6 models for making works available to consumers.  
7 Without effective controls -- that is, technology  
8 reinforced with a legal prohibition of circumvention  
9 -- consumers of digital works will in many ways be  
10 left with fewer, more expensive options, most of  
11 which are less desirable.

12           Proposals for exemptions that were  
13 responsive to the clear parameters the Office set  
14 out in the Notice of Inquiry have been conspicuously  
15 absent in these hearings. Of course, those who have  
16 advocated the crafting of broad and ill-defined  
17 exemptions based on classes of users or uses, rather  
18 than of works, are asking the Office to do something  
19 not within the Office's powers.

20           Since the number and variety of works  
21 which would fall outside 1201(a)(1)(A) under such  
22 exceptions is potentially infinite, these advocates  
23 are in effect asking that the statute be overturned.  
24 Even if properly delineated "narrow and focused"  
25 classes of works had been proposed for exemption, we

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 would remain concerned that in practice any  
2 exemption would spill over to encompass the entire  
3 Section 102 "category of works" within which the  
4 "class of works" fell.

5 I would like to emphasize that SCEA, as  
6 a responsible member of the copyright community, is  
7 interested in the vitality of the fair use doctrine.  
8 Clearly, however, and contrary to the assertions of  
9 certain educators and librarians in this proceeding,  
10 the fair use defense simply cannot serve as the  
11 basis for delineating a "class of works" that might  
12 properly be the subject of an exemption to be  
13 recommended in this proceeding.

14 Fair use is a defense to infringement,  
15 whose applicability is determined through a fact-  
16 intensive inquiry undertaken on a case by case  
17 basis. Fair use, in appropriate circumstances, may  
18 be made of many, many copyrighted works. To declare  
19 in advance that any work of which fair use might be  
20 made is within a class of works exempt from the  
21 statutory prohibition on circumvention would render  
22 the entire provision a nullity -- which may be the  
23 objective of the advocates of "Fair Use Works" as an  
24 exempt class.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           It appears, furthermore, that to anoint  
2 a huge number of works, wholesale, as "fair use  
3 works" would be incompatible with fair use itself,  
4 as an equitable defense and an equitable rule of  
5 reason. In addition, it would contravene Section  
6 1201(c), which mandates that nothing in Section 1201  
7 is to affect either copyright rights or "defenses to  
8 infringement, including fair use."

9           Contentions aside, there has been no  
10 showing that 1201(a)(1)(A) has had a negative impact  
11 on the availability of the fair use defense, or that  
12 any impact is likely in the next three years. The  
13 same is true of the first sale doctrine, as to which  
14 some commentators has voiced concern.

15           The first sale doctrine is, of course,  
16 the product of a world in which copyrighted content  
17 was overwhelmingly distributed via sale of tangible  
18 copies. Even in that world, however, there are  
19 categories of copyrighted works such as broadcast  
20 television programming to which the first sale  
21 doctrine have little or no application.

22           In point of fact, notwithstanding these  
23 ill-defined fears for the future of the first sale  
24 doctrine, technological access control measures to  
25 date have had little discernible negative effect on

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 it. Visit virtually any computer software store and  
2 you will find a section devoted to used PlayStation  
3 games. A quick browse of the Web shows that there  
4 is a flourishing market in second-hand video games  
5 and DVDs as well, particularly if you look on the  
6 auction sites on the Web.

7           The anticircumvention provisions of the  
8 DMCA comprise a carefully crafted corrective measure  
9 designed to maintain in the digital environment the  
10 balance of rights and privileges of authors and  
11 users worked out over the past two centuries in the  
12 copyright law. The narrow question posed in this  
13 rulemaking is whether classes of copyrighted works  
14 exist whose users are likely to be substantially  
15 adversely affected in their ability to make non-  
16 infringing use without exemption from Section  
17 1201(a)(1)(A)'s prohibition of circumvention of  
18 access controls.

19           The advocates of exemptions bear the  
20 burden of persuasion, and they have not sustained  
21 it.

22           I thank you again for giving me this  
23 opportunity to testify before you, and I will be  
24 pleased to answer any questions.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MS. PETERS: Thank you, Mr. Russell. We  
2 now will hear from Mr. Jonathan Hangartner.

3 MR. HANGARTNER: Thank you very much.  
4 My name is Jonathan Hangartner. I'm an attorney in  
5 San Diego and I represent the company, Bleem Inc.  
6 I'd like to thank the Copyright Office for giving  
7 Bleem an opportunity to speak today. I'm still  
8 hopeful that Mr. Herpolsheimer will make it here so  
9 that he can answer any questions you might have.

10 I think it would be helpful for me to  
11 briefly describe Bleem and what it does. And it  
12 provides a good counterpoint to both Mr. Russell's  
13 testimony and also to some of the DVD discussions  
14 that you've heard already this afternoon.

15 Bleem is a software company that  
16 provides interoperability between different computer  
17 systems. Specifically, Bleem produces a software  
18 emulator that allows the consumer to play their  
19 PlayStation video games on a personal computer. And  
20 Bleem will soon introduce a new computer program  
21 that allows consumers to play their PlayStation  
22 video games on a Sega Dreamcast video game console.

23 For the past year I've spent an awful  
24 lot of my time defending Bleem against a lawsuit  
25 filed by Sony Computer Entertainment America, and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 one of the principal claims in that lawsuit is a  
2 Digital Millennium Copyright Act claim, although  
3 obviously not under Section 1201(a)(1). It alleged  
4 that Bleem is a circumvention device because it  
5 allows these games to be played -- the PlayStation  
6 video games to be played on a personal computer.

7 I think it's important to get into a  
8 little bit of detail about how this access  
9 restriction that Sony alleges works. Because there  
10 are an awful lot of different possibilities for  
11 access control technologies, and Sony has a specific  
12 one in place which -- it has been sort of put on the  
13 table here by Sony. And I think it's useful to take  
14 a little bit closer look at it.

15 The access control device that Mr.  
16 Russell has described, which he calls the whiz code,  
17 is actually a code that is placed onto the  
18 PlayStation game discs themselves. A PlayStation  
19 video game console, which Sony produces -- and it's  
20 their device which plays PlayStation video games --  
21 looks for that access control code. And if it's not  
22 present, unless the console's modified, it will not  
23 play that disc.

24 So, in effect, this whiz code only  
25 controls access to PlayStation games on a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 PlayStation console. If a PlayStation game disc is  
2 placed into a regular personal computer, CD-drive or  
3 into any other CD-drive, that CD-drive will actually  
4 read the data on the disc.

5           The access control device, this whiz  
6 code, does not prevent the information from being  
7 accessed by the disc. Because essentially what  
8 happens is the disc drive doesn't know to look for  
9 the whiz code. And since it doesn't know to look  
10 for the whiz code, the access control doesn't take  
11 effect.

12           And this type of situation is addressed  
13 in the DMCA in the no-mandate provisions, which do  
14 not require consumer devices to search for codes or  
15 to look for codes that might control access. But  
16 what's happened is that Sony has alleged in the  
17 litigation against Bleem that Bleem is a  
18 circumvention device.

19           And, in fact, earlier this week a  
20 similar claim in another case brought by Sony  
21 Computer Entertainment America against another  
22 company which produces a PlayStation device,  
23 emulation device similar to Bleem -- the District  
24 Court in the Northern District of California ruled

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 that it was, in fact, not a violation of DMCA's  
2 circumvention device provisions.

3           The concern that Bleem has at this point  
4 is that similar lawsuits will come along as soon as  
5 Section 1201(a)(1) takes effect. But those lawsuits  
6 could be directed at Bleem's customers. It's a very  
7 real and likely possibility that, upon enactment of  
8 this provision, when this provision takes effect,  
9 Sony could allege that Bleem's consumers, when they  
10 access the information on the PlayStation disc and  
11 play a PlayStation game on either their PC or their  
12 Dreamcast are, in fact, circumventing Bleem's  
13 technological measures that it alleges are designed  
14 to control access to its copyrighted works.

15           This concern, while we think that Bleem  
16 certainly could defend such claims, or could assist  
17 its customers in defending such claims, the threat  
18 of these claims could have a very serious chilling  
19 effect on the sales of Bleem and on the use of  
20 Bleem's products by consumers.

21           It also has a serious risk of chilling  
22 Bleem's ability to distribute its products. Because  
23 distributors, retailers, all of the folks up and  
24 down the distribution chain are very concerned about  
25 potential lawsuits against customers. So the threat

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 of a lawsuit, even if successfully defended, has a  
2 powerful impact on the market.

3           The risk is also, I think, very real  
4 given the behavior that's been exhibited by Sony in  
5 the past. Bleem felt early on, quite strongly, that  
6 its device was not covered under the DMCA. It was  
7 not a circumvention device. But it's taken a year's  
8 worth of litigation and substantial expense to go  
9 through the process of litigating claims under this  
10 new act.

11           So, in considering these issues of  
12 burdens of persuasion and the availability of  
13 evidence that establishes a class of works that may  
14 be affected by this new provision, I think it's  
15 important to keep in mind the detrimental effect of  
16 ambiguity. Ambiguity works in favor of large  
17 companies, and it allows them to bring lawsuits  
18 which, while ultimately unsuccessful, can drive a  
19 small company right out of business before they ever  
20 get to market.

21           Taking this sort of to the next step, I  
22 think it's useful to compare the situation with the  
23 PlayStation disc with the DVD/CSS issues that we've  
24 been talking about, which involve complicated issues  
25 of licensing up and down the distribution chain.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The PlayStation CDs don't have any of  
2 these issues. As Mr. Russell described, the  
3 PlayStation CDs are actually acquired by the user.  
4 So we don't have a situation where the copyrighted  
5 work is being licensed to the customer. You have a  
6 situation where that customer lawfully acquires a  
7 copy of the copyrighted work.

8           Bleem feels very strongly that the  
9 consumer's ability to play that copy of the  
10 copyrighted work on any platform they choose is a  
11 non-infringing use of the copyrighted work, and that  
12 must be protected. This provision opens the door  
13 for substantial impacts on the consumer's ability to  
14 perform that non-infringing use.

15           If, in fact, it was determined that  
16 playing a PlayStation disc using Bleem was a  
17 circumvention, then all of these consumers would be  
18 foreclosed from a clear non-infringing use of that  
19 copyrighted work which they paid \$40 for, for a  
20 simple CD.

21           So in looking -- again, taking this to  
22 the specific and maybe working outward, and trying  
23 to get to the particular question the Office has to  
24 address here, should there be a class of works that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 is exempted from this. The PlayStation game CD  
2 provides a pretty good example.

3           You have a disc which is sold to  
4 customers, which this provision could and is likely  
5 to substantially affect their ability to perform  
6 non-infringing uses. To the extent that you can get  
7 around the chicken and egg problem that you have  
8 with this provision in trying to put the burden on  
9 the proponents of a particular class of works when  
10 the statute has not yet taken effect, so it's  
11 virtually impossible to come up with discrete  
12 verifiable measurable impacts, this example goes  
13 pretty far towards that.

14           Because we have shown the impacts, or we  
15 can show the impacts that even a simple DMCA has had  
16 on Bleem in trying to sell its product over the past  
17 year. And that it's likely, very likely to have a  
18 similar effect on consumers down the road.

19           The problem with letting this act take  
20 effect, so that we can then ultimately prove this  
21 impact, is that three years down the road is an  
22 eternity in the age we live in, in terms of the  
23 technological advancements. There's a new  
24 PlayStation platform coming into effect that's DVD-  
25 based. A variety of changes.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           So these issues will tend to become moot  
2 over the course of that time period. So there's a  
3 real risk here that in the course of the three years  
4 that it would take to reevaluate a particular  
5 exemption, the question will no longer be relevant.

6           I think with that I'll kind of stop my  
7 comments here -- we've been talking a lot about in  
8 theory and the different ideas going out -- and  
9 maybe open it up to questions. If you have any  
10 particular questions we can certainly discuss how  
11 these access devices work, and the distinctions with  
12 the licensing issues between the DVD issues.

13           MS. PETERS: All right. Thank you. It  
14 is now five minutes after four. Some people have  
15 been sitting here since 1:30. And what we're going  
16 to do is take a short break.

17           When we come back, before we ask our own  
18 questions, I'm going to give anyone on the panel an  
19 opportunity to say anything else that they may want,  
20 based on what they've already heard. So why don't  
21 we take -- it's now, what, 4:15? We'll come back.

22           (Whereupon, a brief recess was taken.)

23           MS. PETERS: Good afternoon again. We  
24 are going to resume the final part of our hearing.  
25 And for those of you who find this room a little

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 warm, we have been told that all the facility people  
2 have gone for the day. And so there is nothing we  
3 can do about it. So, hopefully this won't take too  
4 much longer.

5 I left it with anyone who had anything  
6 that they wanted to add before we got into questions  
7 could do so now. So is there anyone who wishes to  
8 speak?

9 MS. GROSS: I just wanted to go back to  
10 a few points raised by a couple other folks, and  
11 talk about them. The first would be the example  
12 given why it should be illegal to circumvent a DVD  
13 the same way it's illegal to circumvent HBO. It's  
14 really an irrelevant example.

15 Circumventing HBO is something you  
16 haven't paid for. If you bought a DVD, if you  
17 purchased it, it is something that you have a right  
18 to view as opposed to HBO. So that example really  
19 doesn't add anything to this discussion.

20 I think it's also important to point out  
21 that if many VHS movies are unplayable on machines  
22 because of the international difference in  
23 standards, that's a pretty good reason to exempt  
24 them, simply because it will provide greater  
25 opportunity for people to receive copyrighted works

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 they never would have had a right to, or the ability  
2 to receive beforehand.

3 I think it's also important to point out  
4 that equipment to play a different region's DVDs is  
5 not readily available. CSS prohibits such equipment  
6 from being marketed in other regions. And Sigma  
7 Systems website offers an OEM card for Linux  
8 drivers, but it does not sell its computers. So as  
9 far as I'm aware there is not yet an available Linux  
10 player available to consumers.

11 Another point I wanted to make was that  
12 if having content on a single hard disk means that  
13 instant massive piracy will occur, why is there no  
14 massive piracy since October when DCSS was released?  
15 Or since December when it was publicized?

16 I think it's also important to note that  
17 the MPAA has said, both publicly and in court  
18 depositions, they don't have a single piece of  
19 evidence of DCSS-related piracy. Technological  
20 measures can never implement the true contours of  
21 fair use. So far, every measure offered by  
22 providers has been more restrictive than the law  
23 allows, not less restrictive.

24 And I also think it's important to point  
25 out that Congress intended that access to things

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 like a book be protected, only before purchase, not  
2 after. Not after it's been read with impunity. So  
3 what's wrong with that for the new media, too? In  
4 fact, the DMCA states explicitly that the same  
5 limitations shall apply.

6           And my last point is I want to raise  
7 that the Supreme Court has said that every person's  
8 a publisher on the Internet. And that gives a  
9 greater First Amendment protection than paper or  
10 other traditional media, not less protection as the  
11 copyright -- so I just wanted to make those few  
12 points regarding different views that you've heard.

13           MS. PETERS: Thank you. Anyone else?  
14 Mr. Goldberg.

15           MR. GOLDBERG: I'm Morton David  
16 Goldberg. I have some general comments based on all  
17 five days of the hearing.

18           Much of the five days' testimony appears  
19 to me as a scenario scripted by Lewis Carroll. I  
20 don't propose to revisit the entire scenario, but  
21 only to comment briefly on what we've been exposed  
22 to, and what may seem to some of us to be a trip  
23 down the rabbit hole.

24           Specifically, I propose to mention  
25 briefly just the following: One, the purported

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 threats of being thrown in jail or fined criminally.  
2 Second, the issue of a congressional imbalance --  
3 and I refer to the legislation, not the legislators.  
4 Third, the treaty obligations of the United States.  
5 Fourth, the claim of an exemption for so-called  
6 "fact works" or "thin copyright" works as  
7 constituting a particular class for an exemption.  
8 Fifth, the First Amendment, freedom of speech, and  
9 1201. And lastly, an overview of the five days of  
10 testimony.

11           First, with regard to the criminal  
12 penalties: there's been a good deal of apprehension  
13 voiced, both here and in the hearings in Washington,  
14 about the criminal provisions. Apprehension, that  
15 is, by librarians and educators.

16           This is perhaps raised, or these  
17 statements of apprehension are perhaps made, as a  
18 proffer of evidence as to some sort of adverse  
19 effect. But unless I'm missing something in my  
20 reading of the statute, these claims ignore 1204(b),  
21 which exempts libraries and educational institutions  
22 from criminal liabilities with regard to 1201 and  
23 1202.

24           If the witnesses are concerned, not  
25 about the institutions themselves, but about the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 library users, the students and faculty, and  
2 researchers, then I think we have to look at  
3 1204(a), which says that to constitute a criminal  
4 violation it has to be willful, has to be for  
5 purposes of commercial advantage or private  
6 financial gain.

7           As the panel knows, this is essentially  
8 the same language as in the criminal copyright  
9 provision, 506(a)(1). And I'm not aware, and I  
10 don't think the panel is aware, of any evidence that  
11 the longstanding 506 has filled our prisons with  
12 librarians, educators, researchers and students.

13           Second, with regard to the matter of  
14 balance: the claim has been made that it's up to the  
15 Copyright Office and up to the Librarian to strike a  
16 balance. Congress has already done so in many pages  
17 -- many, many pages of exhaustive and exhausting  
18 detail.

19           There is essentially just a single  
20 sentence to 1201(a)(1)(A), but there are pages and  
21 pages of exceptions.  
22 And nothing in Section 1201(a)(1) suggests or  
23 permits this panel, or the Librarian, to make  
24 amendments to those exceptions, to enlarge them or  
25 to diminish them.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           There are also numerous exceptions in  
2 Section 108 and elsewhere giving special treatment  
3 to a variety of not for profit institutions.  
4 Congress has again struck the balance in those  
5 provisions. You can mumble various Latin phrases,  
6 but in English the essence of it is that specific  
7 legislation is to be followed specifically.

8           Treaties: We have the WCT and the WPPT, (the  
9 WIPO Copyright Treaty, the WIPO Performances and  
10 Phonograms Treaty), and we have TRIPS (the World  
11 Trade Organization agreement on Trade-Related  
12 Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights) and we have  
13 the Berne Convention. As Ms. Gross has reminded  
14 you, Article 11 of the WCT (and the parallel  
15 provision in WPPT) obligates the U.S. to "provide  
16 adequate legal protection and effective legal  
17 remedies against the circumvention of effective  
18 technological measures."

19           Whether there is "an access right  
20 granted" under Section 1201 really doesn't make any  
21 difference. It's clear that "adequate legal  
22 protection and effective legal remedies" can't be  
23 provided against circumvention without 1201. TRIPS  
24 requires the U.S. also to give "effective and  
25 adequate intellectual property rights."

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The broad exemptions of the sort that  
2 have been requested in the five days of the hearings  
3 clearly would violate these international  
4 obligations. The exemptions would not qualify under  
5 the three-step test under WCT Article 10.2, Berne  
6 9(2) and TRIPS 13, namely, the three steps that such  
7 exemptions can be permitted only in certain special  
8 cases, not for all works, not for all works of which  
9 fair use is to be made, et cetera.

10           And secondly, exemptions have to be  
11 those that do not conflict with a normal  
12 exploitation of the work. Selling copies of the  
13 Bible in Gutenberg days was the normal exploitation  
14 of the work. Now we have many, many, many normal  
15 exploitations of the work. And clearly the kind of  
16 exemptions that have been requested here would not  
17 comply with that portion of the three-step test.

18           And lastly, the three-step test requires  
19 that any exemption "not unreasonably prejudice  
20 legitimate interests of the author." There has been  
21 a great deal of testimony by the copyright owners as  
22 to the significant prejudice that would be incurred  
23 by them if the exemptions were to be adopted.

24           Third, with regard to "fact works" and  
25 "thin copyright" works: mention has been made that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the anticircumvention provision with regard to these  
2 works should not apply, that there should be an  
3 exemption for them. And if we look at some of them,  
4 we have to wonder what such an exemption would  
5 bring.

6           Newspapers are, of course, notably fact  
7 works. The Wall Street Journal, it's my  
8 understanding, is available online, as is the New  
9 York Times. But unlike the New York Times, the Wall  
10 Street Journal charges for its subscription. It  
11 seems to me that the Wall Street Journal has many,  
12 many facts in it.

13           And I just do not think that the  
14 congressional contemplation was that the Librarian  
15 should adopt an exemption for fact works in order to  
16 permit people to circumvent the access control  
17 mechanisms of Dow Jones (which I do not represent) in  
18 order to thereby make fair use of the facts that are  
19 found in the Wall Street Journal.

20           Likewise, with regard to fact-heavy  
21 legal treatises. I think the argument would be that  
22 they give you the facts of the cases, and the cases,  
23 of course, are public domain; so it's clearly fair  
24 use to just look at a treatise and get at the public  
25 domain material if you just want to know what the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 case held. I don't think that such fact-intensive  
2 works should qualify for exemptions. And on and on.

3 Histories have also been mentioned. I  
4 guess this would permit us to circumvent access  
5 control mechanisms with regard to Arnold Toynbee,  
6 Carl Sandburg, Winston Churchill, and on and on, all  
7 historians, because clearly there are lots and lots  
8 of facts, and we want to get fair use access to  
9 them.

10 Fourth, the First Amendment and freedom  
11 of speech. Freedom of speech is what the protesters  
12 yesterday and today in this proceeding have -- quite  
13 properly -- been exercising, telling Congress and  
14 the Copyright Office what they should do with the  
15 DMCA. That's kind of a bass ostinato to the themes  
16 of this proceeding.

17 That's fine. That's freedom of speech.  
18 But freedom of speech is not what I understood a  
19 speaker to say in the Washington sessions: some  
20 sort of right to get at and use copyrighted  
21 expression. And if I heard correctly, the speaker  
22 in Washington said that the Supreme Court in Harper  
23 v. The Nation supported her view.

24 My recollection of Harper v. The Nation  
25 is that the decision held just the opposite. That

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the First Amendment gives no privilege to use  
2 copyrighted expression, even when the expression is  
3 of such great public significance as the memoirs of  
4 a former President of the United States.

5           And contrary to what may have been the  
6 implication attributed to that decision earlier this  
7 afternoon, the fair use safety valve certainly does  
8 not exculpate all infringements as mere free speech.

9           I may be the only one, other than the  
10 members of the Copyright Office panel, who has sat  
11 through the entire five days of the hearings. But  
12 it's apparent to me that only in a Lewis Carroll  
13 scenario could it be deemed that there's been a  
14 sufficient showing of the actual impact or likely  
15 impact that the statute requires.

16           There's been no showing of any  
17 "substantial diminution" of availability for non-  
18 infringing uses; there's been no showing that the  
19 prohibition is the cause of any "substantial adverse  
20 impact." And prospectively, there has been no  
21 showing of "extraordinary circumstances" of likely  
22 impact, and no evidence that is "highly specific,  
23 strong and persuasive," in the absence of which,  
24 Congress has made clear, "the prohibition would be  
25 unduly undermined" by conferring any exemption.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 I, too, thank you for the opportunity to  
2 make these observations at the hearing. And I join  
3 Mr. Russell in being pleased to answer any questions  
4 you may have.

5 MS. PETERS: Thank you very much.  
6 Anyone else? If not, we will start the questioning  
7 with our General Counsel, David Carson.

8 MR. CARSON: Thank you. Mr. Marks, we  
9 heard from Ms. Gross that there is not yet an  
10 available -- Linux player available to consumers.  
11 That the Sigma player was the only one available.  
12 It's available in OEM product. Is that your  
13 understanding, first of all?

14 MR. MARKS: I wish I had more  
15 information on that. I know there are two licensees  
16 of the CSS technology who are producing applications  
17 for Linux system. I know the Sigma design is a  
18 hardware application. I don't know exactly how it  
19 functions. But I will be happy to get information,  
20 more information to you when I find out the details  
21 of this license.

22 MR. CARSON: Yes. Thank you.

23 MR. MARKS: I also wanted to mention  
24 that the DVD Copy Control Association was actually  
25 the organization responsible for administrating the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 CSS licenses. I would be happy to supply the  
2 Copyright Office and the Register with any  
3 information that they would like.

4 So I will try and get that information,  
5 but I would also suggest perhaps an inquiry to them.  
6 Or maybe I should suggest to them that they file  
7 additional written statements with you.

8 MR. CARSON: The latter might be a good  
9 idea. Let's assume for a moment, though, that the  
10 statement is correct. Which means, I assume, that  
11 if I'm running Linux operating system on my  
12 computer, and I want to play DVD, there is no way  
13 that I can do that unless I go out and buy a new  
14 computer which has this driver on it that's an OEM  
15 installation.

16 Isn't that a problem?

17 MR. MARKS: I don't think it's a  
18 problem. Because I think, first of all, if you have  
19 bought a DVD and you have a software operating  
20 system that doesn't support an application to play  
21 the DVD, you don't have to buy a new personal  
22 computer. You might need to purchase a new  
23 operating system, or you might need to purchase a  
24 new software application when it becomes available  
25 to play DVD, to install on your computer.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           For example, even under the prevalent Windows  
2 operating system -- and if I am misspeaking myself,  
3 I hope maybe someone who's in the audience from  
4 Microsoft will correct me. But I think on prior  
5 versions of Microsoft, Microsoft Windows operating  
6 system, they didn't have media player pre-installed  
7 on the Windows operating system that would allow for  
8 playback of DVDs.

9           Therefore if you purchased a DVD and you  
10 had a Windows operating system, and you had a PC  
11 that had a DVD-ROM drive, you might still need to  
12 purchase a software application to enable your PC to  
13 play the DVD. So I really don't see where there's a  
14 great difference between that situation and the  
15 Linux situation.

16           MR. CARSON: Although anyone can get a  
17 little media player for free, I think. Can't they?

18           MR. MARKS: That may be the case. But  
19 then there's no prohibition to a software developer  
20 in taking out a license to create the equivalent  
21 application, software application for the Linux  
22 system and making it available to its users for  
23 free.

24           MR. CARSON: But if no one has done  
25 that, why is it a problem for an individual user who

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433   WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701   www.nealrgross.com

1 wants to be able to watch that DVD on his own  
2 computer, which happens to run a Linux operating  
3 system, to do what he has to do so that he can view  
4 it?

5 MR. MARKS: The problem with that is  
6 that it's not simply a matter of the encryption and  
7 protection on the DVD disk guaranteeing the payment  
8 by that individual user for the copy of the disk.  
9 The whole purpose of the encryption in the first  
10 place is because it carries with it certain copy  
11 control applications.

12 As Ms. Gross correctly said, one of  
13 those applications, for example, is that the content  
14 not be permitted to flow out a digital output from a  
15 computer. If the user is allowed to circumvent the  
16 technical protection measures, yes, that may enable  
17 the consumer to view the content from the DVD disk.

18 But it may also, and likely would also,  
19 undermine the other protections that are inherent in  
20 the DVD system, and allow for very easy unauthorized  
21 reproduction and distribution of the content of the  
22 DVD. For example, over the Internet. So that's the  
23 risk that is entailed by allowing for that  
24 individual circumvention.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. CARSON: Ms. Gross, let's assume  
2 that between now and October 28th, Sigma or somebody  
3 else do release whatever equipment it is for  
4 commercial purchase, so you can go down to Comp USA  
5 or wherever, and buy what you need to put on your  
6 machine running with this operating system and view  
7 DVDs. Is that going to moot the issue, at least  
8 with respect to Linux users?

9                   MS. GROSS: Well, the problem is that  
10 there are additional operating systems that are  
11 being created every day. And individuals should not  
12 be required to go out and purchase a \$10,000 license  
13 in order to build an application that will play  
14 their DVDs. That's something that would be  
15 unprecedented in other forms of media.

16                   Additionally, there are problems with --  
17 there are antitrust problems for tying the hardware,  
18 the machine, to the software itself, the DVD.  
19 Microsoft is about to be broken up for this very  
20 reason. And so I think you need to think about  
21 antitrust implications in tying the two together as  
22 well.

23                   MR. CARSON: Okay. But let's focus just  
24 on Linux users. I know there are other operating  
25 systems out there. But certainly, from personal

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 experience I can say, having looked at the comments  
2 that have come in to us, the vast majority of  
3 comments we have received in this proceeding have  
4 been from people who run computers on -- with a  
5 Linux operating system that are upset that they  
6 can't use those computers to watch DVDs.

7           So let's focus purely on those people.

8           MS. GROSS: Linux users.

9           MR. CARSON: Linux users, yes. If, in  
10 fact, the Sigma piece of equipment suddenly were  
11 available on the shelves of your nearest computer  
12 equipment store, would there still be a problem for  
13 Linux users? Or would Linux users basically --  
14 would you have to say on behalf of Linux users --  
15 assuming you're speaking on behalf of them -- will  
16 find that problem solved? No need for the Librarian  
17 to address that aspect of the problem?

18           MS. GROSS: Well, I think it would  
19 depend on the terms of the license for CSS. The  
20 thing that is so attractive to people for using  
21 Linux is their ability to manipulate their own  
22 software on their own machines.

23           And if the Linux player prohibits  
24 people's ability to use their machines, and to  
25 manipulate the software and images in ways that they

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 have a legal right to do, I think we'd still have a  
2 problem. So I wait and see this machine, and what  
3 it does and what it doesn't do.

4 MR. CARSON: Okay. Let me ask a  
5 question for any of the representatives of the  
6 copyright owners who would like to take a stab at  
7 it. And I recognize we've heard this a hundred  
8 different ways over the five days of testimony. But  
9 if someone could just sort of put in a nutshell why  
10 is it that we want to protect technological measures  
11 that control access to copyrighted works? Why is it  
12 important to do that?

13 MR. METALITZ: I'll answer that question  
14 on two levels. One that we should never overlook,  
15 is that it's important because Congress has decided  
16 it is important. And that obviously constrains what  
17 this rulemaking proceeding can do within that  
18 determination that's already been made.

19 But I think the larger reason, and the  
20 reason why Congress decided that it was important to  
21 protect it, is that these types of measures are  
22 really key enabling tools for electronic commerce.  
23 If we're serious about developing electronic  
24 commerce works of authorship, then we have to  
25 recognize -- as you've heard today from Sony

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Computer Entertainment America and from Time Warner  
2 and MPAA -- that that commerce is not going to  
3 exist, or it's going to be extremely stunted and  
4 distorted unless copyright owners have the ability  
5 to use these types of technological control  
6 measures.

7                   They need to have the ability to manage  
8 and control access to their works in order to  
9 disseminate them more broadly. They need to have  
10 the legal back-up to prevent, or to deal with  
11 instances of circumvention.

12                   So if we want to see a thriving  
13 electronic marketplace in these works, we need to  
14 have these tools to do that, and Congress recognized  
15 that. And so did the other countries, the more than  
16 one hundred countries that adopted the WIPO  
17 treaties. That's a very important step.

18                   Because this is a new aspect to  
19 international discipline in the field of copyright.  
20 It really is not like what has been done in the  
21 Berne convention, or the TRIP Agreement. It goes a  
22 step beyond that. And I think that is fueled by a  
23 recognition that this is essential. We need these  
24 tools in order to make copyrighted materials

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 available around the world in a global electronic  
2 market.

3 MR. GOLDBERG: If the value can be taken  
4 without having to pay for it, then the copyright  
5 owners are not going to create the value.

6 MR. MARKS: I would also like to  
7 supplement that. While the legal protections for  
8 technical protection measures are new in our  
9 copyright law with the DMCA, and are relatively new  
10 internationally to copyright law dating back to 1996  
11 with the adoption of the two WIPO treaties -- the  
12 concept of giving legal protection to technical  
13 measures that control access to works is not new.

14 The Communications Act of our United  
15 States law, as passed by Congress, has protected  
16 encrypted broadcast signals, whether they be radio  
17 signals or television signals, for decades. I  
18 cannot tell you exactly from when that law dates. I  
19 have it back in my office, and I'd be happy to do a  
20 supplemental submission on that.

21 But there's the Satellite Home Viewer  
22 Act of, I think, 1988 or 1984. And Section -- I  
23 think it's 301 or 201 of the Communications Act  
24 beforehand which prohibits the unauthorized  
25 descrambling of encrypted signals for exactly the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 reasons that have been stated by the other speakers.  
2 That it has been deemed necessary to provide legal  
3 back-up for these technological protection measures  
4 to facilitate commerce and copyrighted broadcasts or  
5 signals and, now in the new digital environment,  
6 other works that can be made available in electronic  
7 form.

8 MR. CARSON: Now, CSS -- clarify for me.  
9 CSS is an access control device, or a copy control  
10 device, or both?

11 MR. MARKS: I'm so glad you asked that  
12 question. Because this is the way CSS works. Can I  
13 give a little bit of background on this?

14 MR. CARSON: I think you need to answer  
15 it, yes.

16 MR. MARKS: Okay. Originally, when  
17 content owners were looking to try and protect their  
18 content on this new digital format of DVD, they  
19 tried to come up with a legislative approach whereby  
20 copy control flags would be inserted in the DVDs,  
21 which is strictly a copy control technology. And  
22 playback devices, whether they be consumer  
23 electronic devices or computers, would be mandated  
24 by legislation to look for and respond to those copy  
25 control flags.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           So that would have involved strictly a  
2 copy control technology, as enforced by law.  
3 Somewhat similar and based on the Audio Home  
4 Recording Act. The Motion Picture Association of  
5 America started -- entered into negotiations with  
6 the consumer electronics companies to develop  
7 exactly such a technological system and legislative  
8 structure.

9           Those discussions resulted in a draft  
10 piece of legislation called the Digital Video Home  
11 Recording Rights Act, or Home Recording Act.  
12 Something like that, DVRA, I think we refer to it.

13           When those discussions were opened up to  
14 the computer industry, the computer industry said,  
15 "No. We cannot sign onto this. We do not agree  
16 with the concept of having Congress mandate that our  
17 devices look for and respond to copy control flags  
18 and content. Copy control flags are essentially  
19 ancillary data that are easy to get lost and it  
20 would be very burdensome to make our machines have  
21 to look at all the streams of data, especially  
22 digital data which basically are just ones and  
23 zeroes, and have to affirmatively look for these  
24 copy control flags. We won't do it, we won't sign  
25 on for it."

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   And the strength of the computer  
2 industry is really demonstrated in the no-mandate  
3 provision of the DMCA. That there is no mandate to  
4 affirmatively look for copy protection measures.

5                   So here we were, after months if not  
6 years of work, kind of back at square zero. What  
7 are we going to do? The computer industry did  
8 acknowledge that making our films available in  
9 digital format did pose works. We did, after weeks  
10 and months of discussions, get them to realize that,  
11 unlike software, you know, Warner Brothers is still  
12 exploiting Casablanca in Version 1.0.

13                   Now, we don't update it, we don't change  
14 it. We -- you know, it's the same classic movie  
15 that we exploit. So once somebody has a copy of it,  
16 they don't have an incentive to get the revised  
17 copy. The work is the work.

18                   Understanding that, the computer  
19 industry came back to us and said, "Fine. This is  
20 our position. If data is coming to our machines in  
21 the clear," meaning unencrypted, descrambled, "We  
22 believe we have no obligation to look for any copy  
23 control flags, to look for any copy protection  
24 devices, or to really follow any rules with respect  
25 to that data. The data comes in the clear, and we

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 can -- our machines should be able to do whatever  
2 they like with that data, and send it out the  
3 machine in the clear."

4           Now, this is completely apart from any  
5 copyright rules, or the fact that if a user is  
6 making unauthorized copies that he may be infringing  
7 the copyright law.

8           They said, "But if that data is  
9 scrambled, if it is encrypted, and we want our  
10 machines, our computers to make use of that data,  
11 then we have a choice. We can either sign up and  
12 get a license to decrypt that data and follow the  
13 rules and conditions that are in that license. Or  
14 our machines will simply pass along the encrypted  
15 data, keeping it in encrypted form. We agree that  
16 our devices and machines should not be permitted to  
17 simply descramble and hack through an encryption  
18 system without any sort of authorization or  
19 permission."

20           Having reached that understanding, that  
21 is the basis upon which we built the CSS system.  
22 The CSS system, called Content Scramble System,  
23 involves initially scrambling the content on the DVD  
24 disk. So it is encrypted, even though that's  
25 completely transparent to the user.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   Because when you put your DVD into your  
2 DVD player, or your DVD computer, in most  
3 circumstances you just press "Play" and the disk  
4 plays. So you don't even necessarily realize that  
5 it's encrypted, but the disks are encrypted.

6                   Those device manufacturers whether they  
7 be players or personal computers or the Sony  
8 PlayStation who would like to have their devices be  
9 able to display and play back those DVD disks need  
10 to get a license to be able to decrypt the CSS  
11 encryption system. They do that by going to the  
12 DVD-CCA and applying for a CSS license.

13                   That CSS license gives them the keys and  
14 tools to be able to decrypt the disks. It also  
15 imposes certain conditions on what the device can do  
16 with the content once it is decrypted. One of those  
17 obligations, for example, is that the content is not  
18 allowed to flow out in the clear on a digital  
19 output.

20                   Another example of an obligation is that  
21 the device has to insert Macrovision on the content  
22 before it goes out the analog output. So by this  
23 combination of encryption technology and licensing,  
24 you have really a structure that involves access  
25 control and copy protection.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. CARSON: Well, it sounds -- I'm  
2 sorry, someone else?

3                   MR. HANGARTNER: I was just about to  
4 jump in with a comment. I mean, I think this  
5 discussion needs to step back a little bit and look  
6 at the DMCA. As Professor Samuelson mentioned in  
7 her comments to the court in one of the CSS cases  
8 back in New York, that these DMCA access provisions,  
9 circumvention provisions are really an adjunct means  
10 of regulating company infringement. They're not  
11 really an end in themselves, particularly when we're  
12 talking about a lot of different situations.

13                   We've got broadcast situations, we've  
14 got pay-per-view situations, you've got end-users  
15 that actually buy a copy of the copyrighted work.  
16 It really has to be viewed in that context, that  
17 this is a means of regulating copyright infringement  
18 rather than an end in itself.

19                   I think it's also important to, as you  
20 look at these things, to think a little bit about  
21 what these access control mechanisms do. For  
22 example, the whiz code that's used by Sony is not  
23 really a copy protection system. What it does is it  
24 limits the games that can be played on a PlayStation  
25 console.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   This serves a variety of purposes. By  
2 linking together this access control system with the  
3 patents that Sony has obtained that relate to that  
4 access control system, Sony's created a system where  
5 PlayStation video games can only be published by a  
6 licensed game developer. So they use this as a  
7 means to control the ability of people to make games  
8 that can be played on a PlayStation console. So  
9 that they maintain control over all of the creative  
10 works that can be used on that console system.

11                   They also use it to put in place these  
12 regional controls that we talked a little bit about  
13 before. So this whiz code, it doesn't prevent  
14 copying of the disks. I mean, you can copy a  
15 PlayStation disk. It may or may not copy that whiz  
16 code, but you can copy the PlayStation disk and  
17 access the information off that copy on a device  
18 other than a PlayStation console.

19                   So, I guess the thrust of my comment is  
20 really to keep in mind that core purpose of access,  
21 circumvention and control as an adjunct to copyright  
22 infringement, which is what this is really all  
23 about. Preventing infringement of people's  
24 copyright.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   I wanted to mention, David Herpolsheimer  
2 has showed up. I think he may want to jump here  
3 with a quick comment on the same subject, if that's  
4 okay.

5                   MR. CARSON: Well, if we get a chance,  
6 in a while. But I sort of would like to stick with  
7 what I was talking about with Mr. Marks.

8                   It strikes me that what we are  
9 describing is perhaps a copying control device in  
10 access control clothing. In other words, you've got  
11 a device that controls access to a work, but not in  
12 the way that, certainly before this rulemaking  
13 began, I thought we were talking about. We were  
14 talking about access control devices.

15                   In other words, I assumed -- naively,  
16 perhaps -- that a technological measure that  
17 controls access to a work, the purpose of that is to  
18 make sure that authorized users and only authorized  
19 users are getting access to the works. So if I paid  
20 the price to the copyright owner otherwise be able  
21 to use that work, then I'm entitled to use it.

22                   And if he somehow gets access to it by  
23 circumventing encryption or passwords, or whatever,  
24 then she's in trouble because she's not an  
25 authorized user. I'm not in trouble because I am.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433   WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701   www.nealrgross.com

1 That's got nothing to do, as far as I can tell, with  
2 what you're talking about.

3                   What you're really talking about, I  
4 think, is an access control measure that is designed  
5 to channel someone towards a device which has copy  
6 controls on it. Is that a fair description, or am I  
7 misdescribing it?

8                   MR. MARKS: I think it's partially a  
9 fair description. I think it is also used -- the  
10 fact that the work is encrypted is used to try and  
11 guarantee that the user has legitimately -- has  
12 legitimate access to the work as well. I mean, I  
13 don't think it's completely devoid, the CSS system,  
14 of trying to ensure that those people that -- for  
15 example, would just simply duplicate the DVD disks -  
16 - you know, pirates who would duplicate the DVD  
17 disks.

18                   And if there were pirate players that  
19 were unlicensed, they wouldn't be able to play those  
20 disks because they were encrypted with CSS. That  
21 serves an access control function as well.

22                   MR. CARSON: But a duplicated --

23                   MR. MARKS: A duplicated DVD disk is  
24 going to duplicate the CSS encryption.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           MR. CARSON: And can be played on any  
2 legitimate player.

3           MR. MARKS: And can be played on any  
4 legitimate player, legitimate licensed CSS player.  
5 And not be played on non-licensed players.

6           MR. CARSON: Okay. So I don't see how  
7 you're stopping the -- I don't see how you're  
8 stopping the piracies of DVDs in that respect.  
9 Pirated DVDs can be sold on the open marketplace and  
10 played in any legitimate DVD player.

11           MR. MARKS: Without infringement  
12 copyright?

13           MR. CARSON: No, no, no. Certainly not.  
14 But we know pirated goods are on the market all the  
15 time.

16           MR. MARKS: Yes, they are.

17           MR. CARSON: And infringing copyrights,  
18 that's very nice to know they're still out there.  
19 So I'm trying to figure out what this technological  
20 measure is doing, and I'm not seeing it as really in  
21 any way restricting access to authorized users.  
22 I'll get to you in a moment, Steve.

23           In other words, there's no reason to  
24 believe as a general proposition that someone who  
25 has a commercially manufactured and marketed DVD,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 manufactured by Sony, perhaps, or any of the major  
2 studios -- Time Warner, whatever -- is not an  
3 authorized user.

4           If someone has that DVD which is  
5 manufactured by Time Warner, you're going to presume  
6 they're an authorized user, aren't you?

7           MR. MARKS: Yes. Although you'd have to  
8 sort of define what you mean by authorized user. If  
9 someone has purchased a DVD from Time Warner,  
10 they're authorized to play it on a licensed DVD  
11 player. They can play it as many times as they  
12 want, there's no restriction on saying it's a one-  
13 time play, it's a two-time play.

14           Are they authorized to make  
15 reproductions of it, are they authorized to copy it  
16 to their hard drive, are they authorized to  
17 redistribute it in electronic form? The answer is  
18 no. So what do you mean by authorized user?

19           MR. CARSON: Are they authorized to view  
20 it on any machine they can find, that they can make  
21 to view it?

22           MR. MARKS: No, no. They're authorized  
23 to view it on a licensed device. If someone were to  
24 buy a VHS cassette, and they didn't have a VHS  
25 player, are they authorized to disassemble the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 videocassette, reproduce the film in there and  
2 convert it into a 35-millimeter print and play it on  
3 their film projector? I don't think so.

4 MR. CARSON: Okay. But, first of all,  
5 there's no contractual privity between the purchaser  
6 of that DVD and Time Warner, I assume. There's no  
7 shrink-wrapped license. You know, you don't sign a  
8 license saying, "I agree only to play this on an  
9 authorized player," when you purchase the DVD.

10 MR. MARKS: That's correct. And neither  
11 is there a shrink-wrapped license when you buy a VHS  
12 cassette that's in NTSC format, and you only have a  
13 PAL player.

14 MR. CARSON: Okay. I go to Europe, I  
15 buy a videocassette, it's PAL. I bring it back here  
16 and when I play it, I find, oh my God, I got a --  
17 what was I thinking?

18 MR. MARKS: Right.

19 MR. CARSON: But, wait a minute. I can  
20 take it down to a shop and they can convert it for  
21 me to NTSC, and they'll make a copy for my own  
22 personal use for NTSC. Would doing that be a  
23 violation of Section 1201(a)?

24 MR. MARKS: It would not be a violation  
25 of Section 1201(a), because that's not a technical

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 protection measure. The fact that it's in PAL is  
2 not a technical -- or encryption. It's not a form  
3 of technological protection measure.

4 I thought you were going to ask me,  
5 frankly, would that be a violation of copyright.  
6 And I'm not sure I have the answer to that. A  
7 commercial service that is reproducing copyrighted  
8 films into different formats, I think they might  
9 well be violating copyright law.

10 MR. CARSON: We don't have to resolve  
11 anything here.

12 MR. MARKS: I'm glad we don't have to.

13 MR. CARSON: But getting back to what we  
14 were talking about. The kinds of things you were  
15 talking about -- yes, if I buy the DVD I certainly  
16 would not have the right to make copies of it, I'll  
17 grant you that. But why don't I have the right to  
18 put it on my computer that maybe running a Linux  
19 operating system? And maybe I can't get a hold of  
20 any equipment that is authorizing license that will  
21 allow me to view that DVD player.

22 But if I can get a hold of that DCSS  
23 code, and if I can manage to crack that myself, so  
24 that I can view it on my own computer, where's the  
25 problem? Whose rights have I violated?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. MARKS: Okay. I'm a little  
2 uncomfortable about talking about DCSS because of  
3 the ongoing litigation.

4                   MR. CARSON: Well, let me tell you that  
5 you better get comfortable because this is a  
6 rulemaking that could affect DCSS.

7                   MR. MARKS: That's fine, that's fine.  
8 But, you know, let me try and answer the question  
9 for you. It's a matter of balance.

10                  As I was trying to describe before, if I  
11 can, as an individual user, circumvent the  
12 technological protection measure on a DVD disk, and  
13 copy that content to my hard drive, there is a risk  
14 that the content owner has that the use by that  
15 individual will not simply be home viewing, but may  
16 also be infringing. Making unauthorized  
17 reproductions, making distributions over the  
18 Internet.

19                  This is not sort of speculative use,  
20 people do that with MP3 files of music all the time  
21 today. Given that degree of risk, the inconvenience  
22 that is posed to a user who purchases a DVD disk,  
23 but doesn't have a DVD player -- which you can get  
24 for under \$200 -- or a software program that he can  
25 install on his computer, or her computer to play the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 disk, if you balance those out I think the  
2 inconvenience to the individual user is far  
3 outweighed by the risks to the copyright owners.

4           And the risk to the general public that  
5 if this sort of circumvention is permitted, then  
6 millions of DVDs that are sold today may not be sold  
7 tomorrow. Because content owners may decide it's  
8 simply too great of a risk for them to put their  
9 content on that digital format. That's the  
10 balancing that needs to take place, in my view.

11           MR. CARSON: And I'm not sure you've got  
12 the wrong balance there, philosophically. But just  
13 looking at the scheme we have in Section 1201,  
14 Congress made the judgment that it was not going to  
15 make it unlawful for an individual to circumvent the  
16 technological measure that controls the use of a  
17 work. Copying and so on.

18           It did make the judgment that it would  
19 make it unlawful to circumvent a technological  
20 measure that controls access to a work. And again,  
21 isn't this access control measure -- CSS that you're  
22 talking about -- a measure that is really designed  
23 as its end, not to control access but to control the  
24 use, by channeling you to that device whose purpose  
25 is to control use?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. MARKS: Well, I think the problem  
2 is, is it's mixed. I mean, as I was trying to  
3 describe, we could not put in an effective  
4 technological measure that would not fail us with  
5 respect to the no-mandate provision in the DMCA,  
6 without employing encryption, which is an access  
7 control technology.

8                   So the very structure of the DMCA  
9 itself, in terms of the no-mandate provision kind of  
10 forced our hand to go to the structure. Now, I want  
11 to be very clear. We already had devised the CSS  
12 structure prior to the implementation of the DMCA in  
13 October of 1998.

14                   But the DMCA only reinforced that  
15 structure that we adopted with CSS, as a result of  
16 the computer industries saying to us, "If the  
17 content is scrambled, we will not descramble it. We  
18 will not have our machines descramble it without  
19 authorization. If the content is in the clear,  
20 don't ask us to try and follow any rules with  
21 respect to that content."

22                   MR. CARSON: Steve, you've been wanting  
23 to jump in.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. METALITZ: Yes. If I may, just  
2 three reactions to this line of questioning. First,  
3 I've said it before and I'm sure we'll say it again.

4                   But it is significant that in your  
5 drawing a distinction between access controls that  
6 are set up with the goal of preventing infringement,  
7 piracy, unauthorized uses, and some other types of  
8 access controls that perhaps don't have that close a  
9 link to infringement -- it is significant to me that  
10 Congress did not make that distinction.

11                   Congress did not say that access control  
12 mechanisms that are for some pure and noble purpose  
13 other than preventing piracy have a privileged  
14 status, and more protection against circumvention  
15 than those that are -- as I think Dean has indicated  
16 -- closely linked to the preventing or dealing with  
17 a huge risk of rampant piracy that CSS is intended  
18 to address.

19                   And since this is not a congressional  
20 committee, but a rulemaking created by Congress, I  
21 think it's important to respect both the  
22 distinctions Congress did make and the distinctions  
23 Congress did not make.

24                   Secondly, I don't think that the type of  
25 system that CSS represents is quite as brand new and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 unprecedented as your question might have implied.  
2 I don't think it's really much different in kind  
3 from other types of access controls such as what  
4 we've heard about before, and probably you heard  
5 about earlier this week. A license that would only  
6 allow access to certain material from certain  
7 designated machines, designated by IP number, or  
8 some other fashion.

9           Now, that's not the exactly the same as  
10 only allowing it from licensed players. But it's  
11 similar in the sense that it is an access control  
12 that manifests itself by saying, "This material may  
13 be accessed on certain machines, and not on other  
14 machines."

15           And again, that's exactly the kind of  
16 access control Congress had in mind when it enacted  
17 Section 1201(a)(1), and that it wanted this  
18 rulemaking to look at.

19           Finally, it just strikes me that this  
20 whole CSS issue is almost a model for a business  
21 case of a problem, if it is one, that can be solved  
22 by the marketplace, and probably is being solved by  
23 the marketplace.

24           If there isn't currently a freestanding  
25 Linux player, a Linux plug-in that can be used to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 play DVDs on a Linux-based computer -- if there's a  
2 market to do that, it strikes me that having to pay  
3 \$10,000 for the license, if the market is more than  
4 a couple thousand people, that's probably a pretty  
5 good deal. And that market need will be filled.

6           It's also important to recognize that we  
7 sometimes think of the only platforms for playing  
8 DVDs as DVD players and computers. But, in fact, I  
9 would venture to say that at least in Japan today,  
10 neither of those is the main way that people watch  
11 DVDs.

12           The main way they watch DVDs is using their  
13 PlayStation 2. That did more to advance the sales  
14 of DVDs in Japan than anything else. That may  
15 someday be the case here.

16           There are going to be many platforms.  
17 There already are, and there are going to be more.  
18 I think the only thing that perhaps makes it a  
19 little difficult for us to see that this is an issue  
20 that the market is going to solve, and that people  
21 will have access to a wide variety of platforms on  
22 which to play DVDs is that there's kind of a  
23 theological taint to this as well. I think we ought  
24 to get it out in the open.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           And even if the plug-in for playing, for  
2 example, a DVD on Windows were available for free --  
3 and maybe it is, for all I know. I don't know what  
4 the strategy is for distributing that. Even if it  
5 were free, there are people, probably some in this  
6 room, that wouldn't do it because they don't want  
7 their machines to be tainted by anything that  
8 emanates from Redmond, Washington.

9           That's a fact. And if that constitutes  
10 a sufficient market, that market need is going to be  
11 fulfilled. But it is a little different from the  
12 typical market situation, where people aren't  
13 theologically motivated in their decisions, but  
14 they're motivated by other factors of what's  
15 cheapest and what's most efficient and what works  
16 best, and so on and so forth.

17           So, I think that sometimes clouds the  
18 picture a little bit. It makes it a little harder  
19 to see that this is really a marketplace issue that  
20 the marketplace is likely to resolve. And the  
21 result is going to be that virtually anybody that  
22 wants to watch DVDs on any platform that's readily  
23 available will be able to do so.

24           MR. MARKS: Can I take one more shot at  
25 responding? I think one of the underlying

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 assumptions of your question, if I can be so  
2 presumptuous, is that if you have bought a DVD disk  
3 you have the right to access the content that's on  
4 the DVD disk. And so if you don't have the  
5 appropriate playback equipment, why shouldn't you be  
6 able to circumvent the protections to get at the  
7 content?

8 I think that argument would be more  
9 powerful if, in fact, the content was only released  
10 on a DVD disk. But, in fact, if you want to see  
11 "The Matrix," you don't have to buy a DVD to do so.  
12 You could see it in the theater, you could see it on  
13 VHS.

14 So the fact that the work is available  
15 in many alternative formats seems to me to also  
16 justify the fact that one should not permit  
17 circumvention of a technological protection measure  
18 by a user simply because the user has chosen to  
19 purchase the work in a format for which the user  
20 doesn't have an appropriate player. And for which  
21 alternative players are available on the market at  
22 very consumer-friendly prices. It seems like a  
23 fairly weak argument to me.

24 MR. CARSON: But it is my understanding  
25 that the quality of what you see on DVD is much

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 better than that which you see on VHS, for example.  
2 And it's also my understanding that oftentimes when  
3 you get a motion picture on DVD, there's a lot of  
4 added value material that you don't get on a VHS.

5 MR. MARKS: Precisely why consumers go  
6 out and buy new equipment. When CDs were first  
7 released, nobody had CD players. Consumers decided  
8 that, "Hey, this is a great format, it's worth my  
9 investment in a new piece of playback equipment." I  
10 see no difference in the DVD context.

11 If consumers like the new material  
12 that's available on DVD, like the new quality that's  
13 available on DVD, they have a choice. They can buy  
14 the DVD and buy a piece of playback equipment, or  
15 not.

16 MR. CARSON: Ms. Gross, maybe you can  
17 help me out. I'm reading my notes, but I'm not  
18 quite sure I'm recalling what you said. But you  
19 said something to the effect that -- were you saying  
20 that someone from MPAA had stated that a person  
21 wanting to make a fair use of a DVD should have to  
22 obtain a license to do so?

23 MS. GROSS: That's right.

24 MR. CARSON: Repeat that, and tell me  
25 who it was that said that.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MS. GROSS: Sure. Let me just remember.  
2 I was at a conference at Yale Law School a few weeks  
3 ago, and General Deputy Counsel of the MPAA -- I  
4 believe Geckner was his last name. One of the  
5 audience members posed him a question, and said,  
6 "I'm a multimedia artist, and I rely on making fair  
7 use of clips of videos for creating new works. If I  
8 want to use the DVD to copy a small clip of that to  
9 include in a new work that I'm going to create, is  
10 it your position that I would be required to get a  
11 license?" And the MPAA said yes, it is.

12 MR. CARSON: Would that be your  
13 position,  
14 Dean?

15 MR. MARKS: What my position would be is  
16 that I don't think wanting to use clips from a DVD  
17 that might constitute and qualify for fair use in a  
18 new work would be sufficient justification to  
19 circumvent the technological protection measure of a  
20 CSS system that's on a DVD.

21 Does that mean that the multimedia  
22 artist is completely out of luck? I don't think so.  
23 Because the multimedia artist can access clips of  
24 the content from a VHS copy, or when the content

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 from the DVD is playing on screen, make a camcorder  
2 copy of the content and use it.

3                   And people may laugh about that, but the  
4 highest -- one of the largest sources of piracy of  
5 our films is from people bringing camcorders into  
6 movie theaters and making camcorder copies, and then  
7 reproducing them. And you'd be surprised at how  
8 good the quality is.

9                   MR. CARSON: Well, I've seen some of the  
10 pretty poor quality ones.

11                   MR. MARKS: Some are pretty poor  
12 quality, some are pretty good quality.

13                   MR. CARSON: Okay. One last thing I'd  
14 like to ask you, Mr. Marks, on this subject. You  
15 give a very articulate explanation and justification  
16 for the regional codes, and the way in which motion  
17 pictures are marketed.

18                   Given all that, however, why should it  
19 be a violation of the law for an individual who may  
20 go to Europe or Asia, or wherever, and pick up a DVD  
21 of a motion picture there and bring it home, to  
22 circumvent for his or her own personal use, so he or  
23 she can view that DVD in his or her own home? Why  
24 is that a problem?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           MR. MARKS: It really goes to the same  
2 question you asked about the access control, why  
3 it's a problem if they don't have a player. It's  
4 because of the fact that the technological  
5 protection measure is not only dealing with access,  
6 but is also dealing with subsequent uses of the  
7 content.

8           I would like to just say a couple of  
9 points about the regional coding, which I missed.  
10 And which some of my colleagues pointed out to me.

11          MR. CARSON: Okay.

12          MR. MARKS: Another reason why we need  
13 regional coding, why we do regional coding is that  
14 the law in various territories is different with  
15 regard to censorship requirements. So we cannot  
16 simply distribute the same work throughout the world  
17 in the same version. Local laws impose censorship  
18 regulations on us that require us to both exhibit  
19 and distribute versions of the films that comply  
20 with those censorship requirements.

21          In addition, the way -- at least the  
22 economics of our business currently work, when we  
23 license distribution of our works to licensees in  
24 other countries, whether it be video distributors or  
25 broadcast distributors, often a precondition in the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 license contract that the distributor seeks is that  
2 the film has had a theatrical release in the U.S.  
3 prior to being exploited in the foreign country.

4           So, those are two other additional  
5 considerations as to why the regional coding scheme  
6 is in place in the first place.

7           MR. CARSON: Now, if I understand your  
8 explanation why it's a problem to even let the  
9 individual user circumvent, to watch that foreign  
10 DVD, it's not that it would be such a horrible thing  
11 for the copyright owner if one person, one  
12 individual happened to see it in his or her home at  
13 a time when he shouldn't have, but that it's linked  
14 to these other protections.

15           MR. MARKS: That's correct. If there  
16 was some way to guarantee that a person who was  
17 circumventing the CSS protection technology to view  
18 a Region 2 disk on a Region 1 player was only going  
19 to view that disk on the player in the privacy of  
20 his or her own home, without further distributing or  
21 copying the disk, it would be less of a problem.

22           There's still the problems associated  
23 that I described before about the windows of  
24 exploitation. Which would make it problematic if  
25 instead of your one individual, it was with the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 entire population of Italy that, each in the privacy  
2 of his or her own home circumvented regional coding  
3 to play a DVD of a movie that had not yet been  
4 theatrically released in Italy and was scheduled to  
5 be released in the future. Yes, that would have a  
6 detrimental impact on us.

7           But in your hypothetical of a single  
8 individual user, I would say, yes. If that single  
9 individual user were circumventing solely to be able  
10 to view the content of the DVD disk in the privacy  
11 of his or her own home, with some iron-clad  
12 guarantee that the circumvention was not going to  
13 lead to further risks of unauthorized reproduction  
14 and distribution, I would agree with you, this is  
15 not a "horrible thing - i.e. a substantial problem  
16 for - the copyright owner.

17           MR. CARSON: But why is it that CSS had  
18 to be designed in such a way that someone who  
19 circumvented in order to overcome the regional  
20 coding, also necessarily would be circumventing the  
21 copy protection? Couldn't you have done it in a  
22 different way that it wouldn't have been a problem?

23           MR. MARKS: No. It isn't that it's  
24 necessarily designed that way. Well, let me back  
25 up.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The way the CSS system works is that the  
2 content in the clear is restricted from being made  
3 available on a hard drive of a computer, or what's  
4 known as a user-accessible bus. I can only speak to  
5 the unauthorized decryption systems that have --  
6 that the hack, frankly, of DSS that has occurred to  
7 date. And with that hack the content of the DVD  
8 disk is made available in the clear, on a computer  
9 user's hard drive. And so that is a problem.

10           We didn't design it so that any attempts  
11 to circumvent would mean it killed the whole system,  
12 but in fact the circumvention device program that's  
13 been developed to date accomplishes that, imposes  
14 that risk. And the problems with that is that that  
15 circumvention device is distributed with messages  
16 that say, "Here it is, copy DVDs to your heart's  
17 content, send them to your friends." So it poses  
18 the parade of horrible risks that we're concerned  
19 about.

20           MR. CARSON: On the subject of regional  
21 coding, Ms. Gross, you spent a fair amount of time  
22 talking about that as being a problem. I'm trying  
23 to figure out how big a problem it really is. And  
24 how many U.S. residents actually go abroad and bring

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 back foreign DVDs, and then find themselves  
2 frustrated by their inability to play them?

3 MS. GROSS: I think many probably do. I  
4 don't have a number, I don't have a statistic. But  
5 I think it's fairly common. When you travel, you  
6 like to -- myself, I like to get music from whatever  
7 region I'm in, and bring it back home with me. I'm  
8 sure some people are perhaps the same way for  
9 movies. And so I think it's a huge  
10 problem. But again, I don't have a number that this  
11 number of people by DVDs abroad. That I can't tell  
12 you.

13 MR. CARSON: You think it's huge enough,  
14 though, that we should make an exemption to a right  
15 that Congress has said that copyright owners have a  
16 right to do, just because you think that there may  
17 be a few people -- or even quite a few people -- who  
18 might find themselves inconvenienced in that way?

19 MS. GROSS: Well, I think I know that we  
20 are. I think that, judging from the enormous number  
21 of comments that were received from people  
22 complaining about their inability to watch their  
23 DVDs, that it is a problem. It's a rather large  
24 problem. And it also is a problem outside the U.S.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           The proceeding here was not just  
2 designed to decide whether or not U.S. residents  
3 would be able to watch their DVDs, but whether  
4 people in general were allowed to watch their --  
5 would be restricted from non-infringing uses.

6           And you think about entire worldwide  
7 audience of people who want access to watching DVDs  
8 from worldwide producers, that's a large number.

9           MR. CARSON: Are you saying that Section  
10 1201 has extra-territorial application? I'm not  
11 sure I follow what you're saying.

12           MS. GROSS: No, I'm not saying that at  
13 all. I'm just saying that there's a lot of people  
14 in the U.S. and in the world who are prohibited.

15           MR. CARSON: Okay. But I'm trying to  
16 figure out why we should be concerned about people  
17 elsewhere in the world who are prohibited. Because  
18 I don't understand how Section 1201 affects them,  
19 and therefore I don't understand why we should be  
20 considering an exemption for Section 1201 for their  
21 benefit.

22           MS. GROSS: Well, I think it's also  
23 important to note that it's not just when you travel  
24 that you want to get a DVD and bring it back. But  
25 you simply can't purchase or order DVDs from foreign

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 distributors. Maybe you want to get a DVD of an  
2 Indian movie, and you're prohibited from playing it  
3 on your device when you bring it -- when it arrives  
4 in the mail.

5 MR. MARKS: But if I could respond just  
6 for a moment. The Indian producer, the Indian film  
7 producer is not prohibited from producing DVD disks  
8 that would be playable on Region 1 machines. So,  
9 for example, we produce DVD disks that are playable  
10 on Region 1 devices and Region 2 devices and Region  
11 3 devices, etc. And there's no prohibition on a  
12 producer from producing DVD disks that are playable  
13 on different regions.

14 And, in fact, the producer has the  
15 ability to produce a single DVD disk that would be  
16 playable on all regions. If you have a producer, a  
17 content owner who is not concerned about the windows  
18 of exploitation, they can produce a DVD disk that's  
19 multiregion, and playable on all regional players  
20 throughout the world. So there is flexibility built  
21 into the system.

22 MR. CARSON: I may be exhausting your  
23 knowledge here, but let's take that example. And  
24 India has, I think, the second-largest film industry  
25 in the world. First? Okay. And yet, outside

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 of India the market for those films is probably  
2 fairly limited. Do you know whether most Indian  
3 films are coded so that -- on DVDs, so that they can  
4 be viewed worldwide? Or are they simply regionally  
5 coded?

6 MR. MARKS: Do you know what? I don't  
7 know, but I will try and find out. I don't even  
8 know if Indian producers are making their films  
9 available on DVD, but I will try to find that out.

10 MR. CARSON: Okay.

11 MS. GROSS: I just wanted to clarify  
12 what I was saying. The Notice of Inquiry was  
13 requesting whether or not there was harm to people,  
14 and it didn't ask whether or not there was harm to  
15 U.S. people.

16 MR. CARSON: Okay. But let's keep in  
17 mind that ultimately what we're trying to do here is  
18 figure out whether we should recommend an exemption,  
19 and that exemption -- I don't think -- can directly  
20 affect what happens outside the United States.

21 All right. So, the harm I've heard from  
22 yourself -- and I want to make sure I've got your  
23 catalogue of problems here with DVDs. We've got the  
24 problem for people with Linux operating systems,  
25 which some people would say is being resolved or may

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 soon be resolved, depending on how available this  
2 driver is, I guess. You've certainly got your  
3 doubts about that.

4                   You've got the problem of regional  
5 coding. What are the other specific problems we've  
6 got that we need to be worried about with respect to  
7 DVDs?

8                   MS. GROSS: The fact that fair use is  
9 completely prevented. As we've heard here today,  
10 people are required to get a license in order to  
11 make a fair use of a DVD. This idea that, well, you  
12 can simply go out and buy a VHS, it doesn't work.  
13 And it doesn't work because DVDs are a completely  
14 different experience than a VHS.

15                   They have director's cuts, you can look  
16 at different shot angle, different camera angles.  
17 There's all sorts of additional information that is  
18 included in the DVD that you simply cannot get on a  
19 VHS. There is no equivalent to a DVD, so fair use  
20 is severely impacted. It's completely prohibited.

21                   MR. CARSON: What other fair uses of a  
22 DVD can't engage in under the current regime?

23                   MS. GROSS: If I want to make a back-up  
24 copy for my own personal use.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MR. CARSON: Okay. Let's stop with  
2 that. What case law tells you that you have a fair  
3 use right to make a back-up copy of the DVD for your  
4 own personal use?

5 MS. GROSS: I think that Sony v.  
6 Universal Cities says that.

7 MR. CARSON: Really? That's an  
8 interesting proposition.

9 MR. MARKS: I don't think Sony says  
10 that.

11 MS. GROSS: Software law specifically  
12 allows you to do that, and DVDs certainly fall under  
13 software.

14 MR. CARSON: DVDs fall within Section  
15 117, is that what you're saying?

16 MS. GROSS: DVDs are software.

17 MR. CARSON: Okay. Are you saying that  
18 they're covered by Section 117?

19 MS. GROSS: I'm not really sure what 117  
20 is.

21 MR. CARSON: Okay. You might want to  
22 take a look at it, and let us know in your post-  
23 hearing comments.

24 MS. GROSS: But I think that the 9th  
25 Circuit decision in the Diamond RIAA case, that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 people have a fair use right to copy an entire song  
2 onto their computer hard drives for personal use --  
3 I think you'll find a lot of that in the case law.

4 MR. CARSON: You might want to cite a  
5 few cases to us, then, too.

6 MS. GROSS: I will do that.

7 MR. CARSON: I'm not terribly familiar  
8 with a whole lot of case law that says you can do  
9 that. Let's go on. What are the fair uses are that  
10 you're saying can't be done right now?

11 MS. GROSS: Well, in one of the  
12 affidavits submitted in the DCSS case was Professor  
13 Charlie Nessen (phonetic) from Harvard Law School,  
14 who talked about how he typically would like to use  
15 a portion of a DVD from the movie, "The Client," I  
16 think it was, as part of educating the law students  
17 on how to handle certain situations.

18 And he's now prohibited from taking that  
19 snippet of the DVD and showing it to his students.  
20 That's an educational use that is prohibited.

21 MR. CARSON: Okay. He could do that  
22 with a VHS version, correct?

23 MS. GROSS: Well, he might be able to.  
24 But there's no guarantee that he could.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. CARSON: Why is there no guarantee  
2 that he could? What on earth could stop him?

3                   MS. GROSS: Because there's no guarantee  
4 that the film will be released in VHS. There's no  
5 guarantee that the DVD is the same equivalent  
6 content.

7                   MR. CARSON: Okay. That particular film  
8 is in VHS right now.

9                   MS. GROSS: Okay, that film may be.

10                  MR. CARSON: Okay. We're talking about  
11 now and the next three years. Are you seriously  
12 telling me that there are films that are going to be  
13 released in DVD in the next three years that will  
14 not be available in VHS?

15                  MS. GROSS: I think that's right.

16                  MR. CARSON: Why do you think that's  
17 right?

18                  MS. GROSS: Because they're completely  
19 separate products, a DVD and a VHS.

20                  MR. CARSON: Well, if they're the same  
21 film -- although the DVD may have added value.

22                  MS. GROSS: I think they're very  
23 different. When you incorporate all the additional  
24 information and the incredibly rich multimedia

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 experience that a DVD provides, it's not at all the  
2 same.

3 MR. CARSON: Okay. Professor Nessen  
4 wants to show a film clip from the motion picture.  
5 He's going to be able to do that with a VHS version.  
6 There's no question, is there?

7 MR. MARKS: He'll be able to do that  
8 with the DVD version. I mean, if he has a DVD  
9 player in his classroom, Section 110 covers that use  
10 of display in the classroom. There's no prohibition  
11 on that.

12 MR. CARSON: I'm just baffled. I don't  
13 know how he can't do what you're saying he can't do,  
14 with what's available to him now. And I think Mr.  
15 Marks is correct. He can take a DVD player into the  
16 classroom, and a tv, and he can show that clip.

17 MS. GROSS: As long as that movie is  
18 available in that format, that's true.

19 MR. CARSON: Well, if it's not available  
20 in that format, he's in trouble anyway. Because  
21 we're talking about a DVD right now, and a DVD  
22 player. I'm sorry, I'm just trying to understand  
23 the fair uses that people can't engage in using the  
24 currently authorized equipment. And so far I  
25 haven't heard any.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MS. GROSS: Simply playing their DVD on  
2 their computer --

3 MR. CARSON: Okay, we've talked about  
4 that. Let's talk about fair use, though. What are  
5 the fair uses that are prevented under the current  
6 regime?

7 MS. GROSS: If I wanted to make a small  
8 copy, or a small excerpt of a certain part for a  
9 certain reason that's only available in DVD, I'm  
10 prohibited.

11 MR. CARSON: Is that correct, Mr. Marks?

12 MR. MARKS: Are you talking about  
13 legally prohibited?

14 MS. GROSS: I'm talking about --

15 MR. MARKS: Or having technically --  
16 making it technically difficult to do so?

17 MS. GROSS: I'm talking about  
18 technically prohibited.

19 MR. MARKS: Again, my answer would be  
20 that, yes, when it comes out the analog output it  
21 will be protected by Macrovision. And yes, the  
22 content will not go out a digital output at the  
23 beginning. So it makes it more technically  
24 difficult to make a copy of a small clip from a DVD.  
25 Is it impossible? No. And that's the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 camcording example that I used. When the DVD is  
2 playing, you can copy a snippet of it on a  
3 camcorder. It may not be convenient, it may not be  
4 the best copy quality that you would like, but I  
5 don't believe the fair use doctrine says that a user  
6 gets to reproduce copies of the best format and in  
7 the best quality.

8           Nobody has ever argued, for example,  
9 that film studios have to make their 35-millimeter  
10 theatrical prints available to users who want to  
11 take out clips or snippets for the purpose of fair  
12 use.

13           MR. CARSON: So you're basically saying  
14 analog is good enough for fair use?

15           MR. MARKS: Yes, I am.

16           MR. HANGARTNER: But doesn't the law  
17 already actually cover that, in that you've kind of  
18 separated the idea of access versus fair use. That  
19 if this person wants to copy it, that they have to  
20 circumvent Macrovision in order to make the snippet.  
21 I thought that that was covered under fair use in  
22 some of the comments -- actually, Marybeth Peters  
23 early on before Congress that access versus  
24 infringement, or am I just totally out of my mind?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. CARSON: We're not psychiatrists, we  
2 couldn't answer that.

3                   MS. PETERS: Thank you.

4                   MR. HANGARTNER: In actually being able  
5 to copy the works, I thought we were talking more  
6 here about access than really talking about copying  
7 the works. If this professor wants to copy the work  
8 with a Macrovision output that comes out, and they  
9 circumvent the technological measure for that  
10 purpose, that's very separate from what we're  
11 talking about here in Section 1201(a) for access in  
12 particular.

13                   MR. CARSON: Well, the point's a fair  
14 one. That if the access control is preventing you  
15 from having the means to make a copy which might be  
16 fair use, then maybe you have a problem. I think  
17 that's Ms. Gross's point.

18                   MR. HANGARTNER: That already exists, I  
19 guess, with Macrovision and with the copying that's  
20 there. Not to argue the other side of things. I'm  
21 just trying to understand it as well.

22                   MS. GROSS: Since all copying is  
23 prohibited by the DVDs, fair use by definition is  
24 prohibited.

25                   MR. CARSON: All right.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433   WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701   www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. MARKS: See, I think that's a  
2 mistake in conception of fair use. To equate fair  
3 use with copying is almost like equating fair use  
4 with consumption. I mean, fair use can involve not  
5 literally copying a work, but copying some of the  
6 expression of a work for parody. Copying some of  
7 the expression of a work for criticism and comment.  
8 It's not just about physically copying the format  
9 that the work happens to be in.

10 MR. CARSON: Well, I'm trying to think.  
11 Aside from the time-shifting situation in Sony, have  
12 there been cases holding that the actual copying of  
13 a motion picture is fair use?

14 MS. GROSS: The Diamond multimedia  
15 decision, RIAA v. Diamond. That's not motion  
16 pictures, but MP3.

17 MS. PETERS: And there's an Audio Home  
18 Recording Act.

19 MR. MARKS: That's correct.

20 MS. PETERS: That has the serial copy  
21 management piece in it, that says there's no  
22 infringement when you make the copy.

23 MR. CARSON: So I think we're going  
24 into, at best, maybe a murky area as to whether fair  
25 use is even available in that context. I'd be

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 interested in hearing or seeing some authority from  
2 you about actual replication of portions of motion  
3 pictures as being fair use. Because I'm not sure  
4 the case law is out there, but I may have overlooked  
5 it.

6 MS. GROSS: Well, I think that the Sony  
7 v. Universal Cities case was about people's ability  
8 to make a complete copy of a complete movie.

9 MR. CARSON: In the context of time-  
10 shifting, you're absolutely right.

11 MR. MARKS: Time-shifting of free over-  
12 the-air television. Sony v. Betamax does not stand  
13 for the proposition that you can make a complete  
14 copy of a work from pay-per-view television, from a  
15 videocassette, from DVD. It simply does not stand  
16 for the proposition that copying audiovisual works  
17 by individuals is fair use. Fair use always balances  
18 the rights of the copyright owner and the use  
19 interests that are being asserted by the putative  
20 fair use user. It's not an absolute.

21 MR. CARSON: All right. Mr. Hangartner  
22 and Mr. Herpolsheimer, feel free to jump in. Well,  
23 first of all, you mentioned a decision just handed  
24 down here in the Northern District of California.  
25 We're not aware of that decision, but we'd certainly

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 like to know more about it. If you have a copy of  
2 it, we'd like to see it.

3 MR. HANGARTNER: Oh, there actually is  
4 not a written decision yet. It was an oral ruling  
5 from the bench last Tuesday in the case, Sony  
6 Computer Entertainment America v. Connectix  
7 Corporation.

8 MR. CARSON: Oh, this is on remand?

9 MR. HANGARTNER: No. Actually, this was  
10 on summary judgment. Connectix moved for a summary  
11 judgment on the DMCA claim brought by Sony, which  
12 claimed that it was a circumvention device.

13 MR. CARSON: I'm sorry, go ahead.

14 MR. HANGARTNER: And the court granted  
15 summary judgment for Connectix. The transcript  
16 should be available next week, and we could provide  
17 a copy if you'd like that.

18 MR. CARSON: Yes, that would be great.  
19 And I gather you expect a written decision to be  
20 forthcoming?

21 MR. HANGARTNER: It's not clear. The  
22 court was not clear if it would be doing a written  
23 decision in the near future, or if it would be  
24 holding off on a written decision until sometime in  
25 the future. But I think the transcript may -- well,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 it will contain the court's comments regarding a  
2 written decision.

3 MR. CARSON: Okay. One thing I wasn't  
4 able to get out of your testimony is what classes,  
5 if any, you are advocating that we recommend the  
6 Librarian exempt from Section 1201(a). Do you have  
7 a suggestion for us?

8 MR. HANGARTNER: Well, the thing of that  
9 I threw out, right off the top of my head, was -- I  
10 mean, I'm not sure of his name, but the fellow over  
11 here in the green tie who was talking earlier. He  
12 mentioned that one way to look at this is to start  
13 from the very specific and move to the more general.

14 And so I was sort of throwing out to  
15 start from the very specific. In our instance, the  
16 particular class of works that Bleem is most  
17 concerned about at this point is PlayStation video  
18 games, which are produced on CD-ROM.

19 Now, I know David's been thinking a bit  
20 about other classes of works, and maybe I'll turn it  
21 over to him. This is one of these things that I'm  
22 sure we'll have an awful lot to say about in our  
23 post-hearing comments. But how you move from that  
24 very specific example, which as I described earlier,  
25 you've got a class of works which are distributed

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 without license, that are actually sold so that the  
2 person acquires a copy of it. And they're sent out  
3 on a CD format that is accessible. So it's a very  
4 specific type of disk that forms that very  
5 particular class of works.

6 Now, whether there is that class of  
7 works shall be defined more generically than  
8 PlayStation video disks is an issue that, I think,  
9 requires some thought. How you can create a class  
10 of works that strikes the right balance here. I  
11 don't know, David, do you have thoughts on that?

12 MR. HERPOLSHEIMER: My concern is more  
13 with the way that we've seen 1201 used specifically  
14 against us, and against the Japanese variant of that  
15 law used against some of our retailers in Japan. Is  
16 that it seems to be being used to expand the scope  
17 of copyright beyond where it already affords  
18 protection for copying for infringement for a lot of  
19 areas.

20 That they're taking this sort of  
21 technological measure and applying almost a self-  
22 help program that some content providers can use to  
23 really lock down their content. And limit the  
24 ability of end-users to actually not just have fair  
25 uses, but have uses at all to the content that they

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 have gone out and lawfully purchased copies of  
2 copyrighted works.

3                   And that the imposition of -- like I  
4 said, expanding 117 to go beyond -- or not 117. It  
5 should be 1201 to go beyond what I've seen in some  
6 of the early history, and some of the statements,  
7 again from Ms. Peters, really talking about it being  
8 something to expand the growth of digital networks.  
9 And to allow copyrighted works to be disseminated  
10 more freely over digital networks by protecting the  
11 rights of copyright holders. And we're all in favor  
12 of that, because we produce content just like  
13 everybody else here. We want to have our works  
14 protected.

15                   But to then take that protection that's  
16 really going more towards specific kinds of uses.  
17 When you're talking about digital networks, it's  
18 almost like protecting -- in the example that he had  
19 of walking in and videotaping a movie in a movie  
20 theater.

21                   What we're really talking about here is  
22 specific accesses of watching a one-time pay-per-  
23 view movie, or you know, playing a copyrighted video  
24 game over a network where you need to protect that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 content to make sure it doesn't just get kind of  
2 sucked off and reproduced.

3 I think it's a different issue, when you  
4 start taking that protection to access, where the  
5 encryption is really essential to protecting the  
6 work over that network. And then trying to apply it  
7 to areas where there are already substantial and  
8 very effective protections against infringement.

9 You know, to start wrapping access  
10 around that starts, I think, hobbling the ability of  
11 users to actually use their works. And gives an  
12 unfair amount of control, I think, to the copyright  
13 holder that's beyond the rights that they should  
14 have under the copyright law. The rights that this  
15 Act is supposed to support.

16 MR. CARSON: Mr. Russell, if I don't  
17 happen to have the Sony PlayStation equipment, but  
18 I've got a Sony PlayStation game, why on earth  
19 shouldn't I be allowed to use the Bleem emulators  
20 where I can play that game on my computer, or on the  
21 Sega equipment or something else?

22 MR. RUSSELL: Well, quite frankly, and I  
23 don't want to try our case here. It's not limited  
24 to the DMCA claim. We have concerns about other IP  
25 rights that we have in these games and in the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 system, and to the way we build these games, that we  
2 have alleged that both Bleem and Connectix have  
3 violated.

4 So I think the case goes well beyond  
5 what is on issue here, which is 1201(a)(1)(A), and  
6 that is not -- we did not bring any action, of  
7 course, against Bleem or Connectix in those. And  
8 the ruling in the court is not under that section.

9 MR. CARSON: All right. Okay. But what  
10 I'm trying to get at -- let me put it another way.  
11 If I did use the Bleem emulator, say, after October  
12 28th of this year, so that I could play one of the  
13 PlayStation games on my PC, would it be your  
14 position that I would be violating Section 1201?

15 MR. RUSSELL: I think that the issue is  
16 an interoperability issue. And I think that is  
17 dealt with in the DMCA under, I believe, it's --

18 MS. PETERS: F.

19 MR. RUSSELL: F. And I think F amends  
20 or is an exemption from Section 1201(a). So you  
21 know, I think that what we're dealing with here, if  
22 that's what we're concerned with, there is a  
23 provision that deals with this. And then the  
24 question is whether it's lawful reverse engineering  
25 to achieve interoperability.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   And I'm not going to go through that.  
2                   That's not the area of discussion here, and I think  
3                   that's something that is very, very fact-specific.  
4                   And certainly should not be made -- determined on  
5                   the -- they come up on an individual basis, and  
6                   shouldn't be determined on a broad exemption by a  
7                   video game class.

8                   MR. CARSON: This is late in the day, so  
9                   maybe I'm not making myself clear. But what I'm  
10                  trying to understand is if I were to use a Bleem  
11                  emulator, would I, in engaging in that conduct, be  
12                  circumventing some technological measures that Sony  
13                  has that were designed to restrict my access to the  
14                  PlayStation games? And if so, would I be violating  
15                  Section 1201(a)?

16                 MR. RUSSELL: Again, I believe that it  
17                 will fall under the exemption that falls under  
18                 Section 1201(f). Because I believe what's happening  
19                 here is, no, you may not be violating the -- you may  
20                 not be circumventing it, you will be having reverse  
21                 engineered it.

22                 MR. CARSON: No, I wouldn't be. I'm  
23                 using the --

24                 MR. RUSSELL: You're the end-user?

25                 MR. CARSON: I'm the end-user.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    www.nealrgross.com

1                   MR. RUSSELL: No, I don't believe the  
2 end-user is **if the emulator is legal**.

3                   MR. CARSON: And you don't think the  
4 end-user is circumventing technological protections,  
5 either?

6                   MR. RUSSELL: The technological  
7 protection is in the disk and in the machine. So I  
8 don't believe that the end-user is **if the emulator**  
9 **is legal**.

10                  MR. CARSON: Okay, okay. That's really  
11 what I was getting at. Thanks.

12                  MR. HERPOLSHEIMER: Okay. Well, just on  
13 that level, one thing that's interesting is that's  
14 exactly what they alleged against us in court. Is  
15 that if the end-user isn't doing it by using our  
16 product, and our product certainly couldn't be doing  
17 it -- and the thing that I'm really afraid of here  
18 in the United States is what's happening to us right  
19 now in Japan.

20                  They have a very similar implementation  
21 as we do in 1201. Their law there, I think, is the  
22 Unfair Competition Act. But it's very similar in  
23 that it protects against unauthorized circumvention  
24 of technological measures that effectively control -  
25 - blah, blah, blah.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   But they have some very specific  
2 language that say that the playing of pirated video  
3 games -- this is one of the concerns that, in our  
4 particular circumstance, comes up, is that because  
5 this whiz code is proprietary to Sony, and in fact  
6 patented, if we were to recognize it we would be in  
7 violation of their patent.

8                   That because of the whiz code -- that  
9 because we don't recognize the whiz code we are  
10 violating or we are circumventing their protections.  
11 In Japan, they say the that the act of playing a  
12 pirated game isn't actually an infringement. It's  
13 making the copied game is an infringement there.

14                   They specifically preclude video games,  
15 they specifically speak towards issues like whether  
16 or not the protection on the disk is actually  
17 voluntary. In the case of video games it's one  
18 where every manufacturer of PlayStation games is  
19 required to appoint Sony as part of their license  
20 for the development tools. They're required to make  
21 them their sole manufacturers of CDs, and that  
22 protection is included in the CDs. So is it truly  
23 voluntary?

24                   In spite of all this, Sony is still  
25 going out and going to our retailers there and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 basically threatening them with lawsuits unless they  
2 cease to carry our product and pay back -- I don't  
3 know, \$200 per copy, I think, for every copy they've  
4 sold. And write a letter apologizing to Sony for  
5 ever carrying it in the first place.

6           And these are the kinds of things that,  
7 if there's any vagueness or if there isn't a clear  
8 exemption for certain kinds of uses in the law that  
9 we can point to, and that we can make clear and  
10 understandable -- this is in the face of MIDI  
11 (phonetic) in Japan. Actually telling the people,  
12 "No, we don't see that there's anything wrong with  
13 it, but who knows what the judge will say?"

14           But I'm just afraid that we're going to  
15 have the same kind of issues in this country. Where  
16 they can go and they can say, "Look, Bleem is a  
17 product that violates the DMCA. You, by selling it  
18 as a store, are in violation of the DMCA," with the  
19 further enactments going down to end-users. And  
20 putting out ads and saying, "Anybody who uses Bleem  
21 is in violation of the DMCA, and we're going go  
22 after them."

23           Contrary to what he said here today,  
24 that's not what they have expressed in court and in  
25 numerous threatening letters to our retailers.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MR. RUSSELL: Quite frankly, I don't  
2 feel this is an appropriate forum to try our case.

3 MR. CARSON: I'm not trying to try  
4 anyone's case. I'm just trying to figure out  
5 whether there's an issue here within our domain,  
6 which is why I'm asking --

7 MR. RUSSELL: No, I understand that.

8 MR. HANGARTNER: I'd just point out,  
9 too, that it's not really a matter of trying the  
10 case. But the fact is that Sony and many of the  
11 other folks who have spoken here today are putting  
12 the burden on the proponents of a specific exemption  
13 to establish that there is an impact. And I think  
14 that this discussion is relevant to that.

15 This is an actual impact that, despite  
16 the fact that 1201(a)(1)(A) is not yet in effect, we  
17 can point to -- provide tangible evidence that this  
18 is a -- there's a real risk of this. And that's the  
19 only reason this is coming out. It's not an issue  
20 of trying cases here, or anything else. But it's  
21 relevant experience that I think bears on this  
22 discussion.

23 MR. GOLDBERG: May I point out that it  
24 is not the copyright owners who have placed the  
25 burden, it's Congress.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MS. PETERS: That is right. And we  
2 still do have one more comment period for people who  
3 want the opportunity to add additional material.

4                   MR. CARSON: In response to positions  
5 taken at these hearings.

6                   MS. PETERS: It is now quarter of six.  
7 So instead of going in order, I'm just going to  
8 basically ask if there's anyone here who wants to  
9 ask questions. I'm going to look around. Okay,  
10 Rachel, we'll start with you.

11                   MS. GOSLINS: I know it's late and it's  
12 hot. So I'll try and keep it really, really brief.  
13 Ms. Gross, I was just wondering how you would  
14 respond to Mr. Marks' argument that, without these  
15 technological protections in existence, without the  
16 existence of them, his company or other companies  
17 wouldn't have put out these products at all.

18                   So, you know, in a sense they're out  
19 there and they're doing some consumers some good.  
20 Why should the fact that they decided to put them  
21 out in a protected format mean that you -- that  
22 anybody has a right to circumvent that, in lieu of -  
23 - if we accept his argument that in lieu of these  
24 protections, they wouldn't even be on the market.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 MS. GROSS: Well, I wouldn't say anybody  
2 has a right. But I think that it's really kind of  
3 false to say that people will not create, that  
4 society will not create absent of technological  
5 protection measures. People have always created,  
6 and they will continue to create.

7 And I think we can look right now to the  
8 music business, and what's going on in the Internet  
9 with music and MP3s. And companies like MP3.com and  
10 eMusic, and all sorts of new business models that  
11 are coming up and proliferating, and all sorts of  
12 new artists who are putting their music out there.

13 Society has never had more choice in  
14 accessing music legitimately. So I think it's  
15 really sort of false to say that society will  
16 discontinue creation of intellectual property absent  
17 this level of protection.

18 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. Dean, just two  
19 really quick questions. Do you currently stagger  
20 video? Does your company, or do you know if other  
21 companies currently stagger video releases between  
22 the -- whatever the initials are of the U.S. format  
23 and the PAL format?

24 MR. MARKS: Yes, there is staggering.  
25 Really, it depends upon the distribution channels of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 the media -- windows of exploitation. In general,  
2 movies are released first in the United States  
3 before they are released overseas. And in general -  
4 - this is subject to some exceptions -- video  
5 release occurs six months after theatre release in  
6 the United States.

7                   So, to the extent that the theatrical  
8 release in Europe is later than the theatrical  
9 release in the U.S., the video release in Europe is  
10 later than in the U.S. And in some countries -- and  
11 I'm not sure it's still the case today, but it  
12 certainly up to recently was the case in France,  
13 there was a law that said you could not release on  
14 video prior to six months after theatrical release.  
15 So we're constrained by some of those laws as well.

16                   If I may, I just wanted one quick  
17 response to Ms. Gross' reply to your answer -- your  
18 question, rather. It's late in the day for all of  
19 us.

20                   I wasn't asserting that absent  
21 technological protection measure people would stop  
22 creating. I was saying that, absent the ability to  
23 use technological protection measure, creators and  
24 publishers and distributors may not make their works  
25 available on certain formats like DVD. I was not

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 saying that there would no longer be creative  
2 activity.

3 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. And one more quick  
4 question. And I know -- I certainly don't want to  
5 get into a long discussion about it at this hour.  
6 But I'm curious, the question I posed to Steve this  
7 morning about what happens if we do decide that we  
8 exempt a class of works, what does that mean under C  
9 & D. I'm just curious to hear your answer to that,  
10 since we're taking a poll.

11 MR. MARKS: I was hopeful that Steve's  
12 scholarly and forthright answer would settle it for  
13 everyone. But I basically agree with what Steve  
14 said. And it's -- on the one hand I'm sort of  
15 sympathetic to the argument that the reference to  
16 users in 1201(d) is users who are making only non-  
17 infringing uses.

18 But the problem that I have with that is  
19 fair use is -- as we all know and as the Supreme  
20 Court has said -- a balancing test that operates on  
21 a case by case basis that's very factually  
22 intensive, and like in Acuff-Rose you have courts  
23 that, at every level of the way, reversed one  
24 another.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           So it's hard for me to imagine creating  
2 bright line rules concerning classes of works for  
3 non-infringing uses, and determining ab initio what  
4 those non-infringing uses are. Is it impossible for  
5 all non-infringing uses? No. I would say private  
6 viewing of videos, for example, in one's own home is  
7 a non-infringing use. Clear. Clear enough.

8           But there are all sorts of copying for  
9 where it's really hard to come up with those bright  
10 line rules ab initio. And so that leads me to think  
11 that maybe Steve is correct, that when 1201(D) was  
12 referring to users, it was referring to users in  
13 general, and not just users who are making non-  
14 infringing uses.

15           The second point being, if one read the  
16 provision to limit it to users who are making non-  
17 infringing uses, how do you really monitor and sort  
18 of enforce that? It would be rather difficult.

19           That being said, I was very sensitive to  
20 Mr. Carson's argument that we don't want to  
21 necessarily turn 1201(b) into the bluntest  
22 instrument possible. So I think it's a very  
23 complicated question.

24           MS. GOSLINS: Okay. Mort, do you have a  
25 response to that?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   MR. GOLDBERG: ~~I'm not sure I agree that~~  
2 ~~the users are to be defined in that way. But I'll~~  
3 ~~have to take another look at it. The users~~  
4 ~~potentially immunized under 1201(a)(1)(D) would be~~  
5 ~~all users of the designated "class of works."~~

6                   MS. GOSLINS: Four questions, and then  
7 that's it.

8                   MR. KASUNIC: I have one question. This  
9 is in regards to CSS. I know we've talked a lot  
10 about it. But CSS protects both access and the  
11 Section 106 rights of the copyright owners, as you  
12 said before.

13                   MR. MARKS: Right.

14                   MR. KASUNIC: 1201(a)(1) protects only  
15 technical protection measures that protect access.

16                   MR. MARKS: Right.

17                   MR. KASUNIC: And Congress specifically  
18 chose not to have a prohibition for the conduct  
19 circumvention of measures that protect the Section  
20 106 rights. So if we have a technological  
21 protection measure that does not discriminate  
22 between access and copy protection measures, the  
23 latter of which was not specifically chosen by  
24 Congress to be prohibited, who should bear that  
25 burden of this indiscriminate use of technology?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1                   Since Congress did choose that the  
2 latter will not be protected, shouldn't this burden  
3 be placed on the copyright owner to show that  
4 there's a need for this, or why the indiscriminate  
5 use is necessary?

6                   MR. MARKS: Let me answer that in a  
7 couple of pieces. One, that I don't think it's  
8 indiscriminate use. I was trying to describe  
9 through the history of the development of the CSS  
10 copy protection structure why the content industry  
11 was really -- I don't want to say forced, but really  
12 led to develop a structure where encryption was the  
13 hook.

14                   It was because of the reactions we were  
15 getting from the computer industry, and the fact  
16 that we knew these works were going to be played on  
17 computer platforms. And by the limits in the law  
18 that say if you employ a mere copy control  
19 technology, like an SCMS flag in audio, absent a  
20 particular legislative provision like the Audio Home  
21 Recording Act that mandates consumer electronic  
22 players to look for and respond to SCMS, the DMCA  
23 says there's no obligation to respond.

24                   So the notion of trying to implement  
25 copy protection technology in a way that devices

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 will respond, required us to go to a system where  
2 encryption was the initial hook. So it's not really  
3 an indiscriminate use, it's a way -- it was really,  
4 frankly, our only way of trying to implement  
5 effective copy protection technology.

6           But I'm not quite done yet, though.  
7 Thankfully, in the area of CSS -- and this goes to  
8 the gentleman, David, David's remark. In this  
9 particular instance, the content flows out the  
10 analog output with Macrovision. Macrovision is the  
11 copy control technology that inhibits copying of the  
12 analog signal. A condition of the CSS license is  
13 that devices, whether they be the computers or the  
14 DVD players, apply Macrovision to the signal as it  
15 goes out the analog output.

16           If a user circumvents Macrovision on the  
17 content of the DVD as it flows out the analog  
18 output, in order to make a copy, the law does not  
19 prohibit the individual conduct involved in this  
20 type of circumvention .

21           So, therefore, if the individual user --  
22 and I think this is what you were getting at -- were  
23 to circumvent Macrovision, it doesn't fall within  
24 the 1201(a)(1)(A) prohibition. It would be a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 circumvention of a copy control technology that is  
2 permitted under the law.

3 MR. METALITZ: Rob, could I add just a  
4 sentence or two to that answer?

5 MR. MARKS: But I want to clarify, if  
6 there are any lingering questions on that. Because  
7 I think it's a very important point.

8 MR. METALITZ: I was just going to say  
9 your question used the word "burden," and we may be  
10 confusing two burdens here. In any particular case  
11 if someone were alleging a violation of  
12 1201(a)(1)(A) the Plaintiff would have to prove that  
13 what was circumvented was an access control. And if  
14 that's the issue, and it was put into issue, the  
15 burden of proof on that would rest with the  
16 Plaintiff to show that.

17 Here, of course, we're only talking  
18 about the burden in this proceeding. Things are a  
19 little bit different. Congress has already decided  
20 that these circumventions should be outlawed, and  
21 the question of exception is that the burden is on  
22 the proponent of the exceptions. But I just wanted  
23 to clarify that.

24 MR. KASUNIC: But the burden is on the  
25 proponent of the exemptions for the access controls.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 Here we have some testimony that there are adverse  
2 effects from CSS -- whether they're cured or not is  
3 another question. So there was some showing that  
4 there were adverse effects to certain users of this,  
5 in terms of the access.

6 The hypothetical we had in Congress of  
7 going into the bookstore to buy the book doesn't  
8 seem appropriate here, in terms of access. Here we  
9 had legitimate users going into that bookstore and  
10 buying the book, the DVD, only to find that then it  
11 too was locked. In addition, different uses of that  
12 DVD were restricted after that lawful access was --

13 MR. METALITZ: The way you pose that  
14 question -- and it really has come up in a lot of  
15 the comments here. You know, it almost sounds like  
16 you're raising a consumer protection issue. That  
17 somehow the consumer is surprised to find that when  
18 she buys a DVD in Europe that she can't play it on a  
19 U.S. machine, or that if you -- to use the late  
20 lamented DIVX technology -- it's probably unlamented  
21 by many in this room. But that was a technology  
22 that was a time-limited DVD, in effect. And you  
23 could only play it three times or over a certain  
24 period of time.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1           I think we have to distinguish between  
2 whether someone maybe wasn't aware when they bought  
3 it, and therefore didn't know what the limitations  
4 were, versus the question of whether it's legitimate  
5 to have the limitations at all. Or whether there's  
6 some problem, from the perspective of this  
7 proceeding, with using access control mechanisms to  
8 enforce those limitations.

9           Now, when people subscribe to HBO, they  
10 generally do know. They're put on notice that it's  
11 a time-limited subscription. They can't go back  
12 later and put in a black box to see again what their  
13 subscription has expired to.

14           But, the consumer protection side of  
15 that is a separate question from whether, A, the  
16 copyright owner can use those access control  
17 mechanisms, and B, whether it's illegal to  
18 circumvent those. And, as Dean has pointed out, for  
19 some 20 years it's been illegal to circumvent those  
20 protections. So this, again, is not really a new  
21 concept.

22           MR. MARKS: Steve, I just want to  
23 supplement the HBO example, because there had been a  
24 comment that the HBO example was irrelevant because  
25 if you were descrambling because you hadn't paid for

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433    WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701    [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 your HBO subscription, that was a different case  
2 from having bought a DVD, paid for it and not be  
3 able to play it.

4                   That was not the example that I used in  
5 my testimony. The example I used was you had  
6 purchased a subscription to HBO, and during the time  
7 that you are a legitimate purchaser of HBO's  
8 service, you own a television set -- granted there  
9 aren't many around today, probably, except maybe in  
10 antique stores -- a tv set that was not cable-ready,  
11 that could not accommodate a set-top box.

12                   The HBO signal would be coming to your  
13 home in encrypted form. If you had a television set  
14 that could not accommodate the set-top box with a  
15 descrambler for the HBO system, under the  
16 Communications Act you do not have a right to buy a  
17 black box and decrypt the HBO signal in order to get  
18 the content. Even if you're a subscriber and have  
19 paid for HBO. And that's the point I wanted to try  
20 and make.

21                   MR. GOLDBERG: May I comment on the  
22 implication of the question there? I think the  
23 question implicates the matter of burden very  
24 clearly. And we are to focus on distinct,  
25 verifiable and measurable impacts. Isolated or de

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 minimis effects, speculation, conjecture, et cetera,  
2 do not amount to meeting of burden. And I think  
3 that those effects that are isolated, de minimis,  
4 speculation, et cetera, should be regarded as such.  
5 And not as meeting a burden.

6 MR. KASUNIC: I just want to offer Ms.  
7 Gross or anyone else an opportunity.

8 MS. PETERS: I just want to ask one  
9 question on behalf of libraries. Libraries purchase  
10 DVDs. And DVDs, do they deteriorate or do they stay  
11 good forever? You're a library that's an archive.

12 MR. MARKS: Right. My understanding --  
13 and again, this is going to be an additional  
14 question for me to research for you -- is that the  
15 life of a DVD disk is greater than the life of a VHS  
16 tape, an analog videocassette. That that will  
17 deteriorate more quickly than a DVD disk will. But  
18 it is not my understanding that a DVD disk will not  
19 ever degrade over time.

20 MS. PETERS: Are you aware of libraries  
21 purchasing and then seeking in the purchase, the  
22 ability to somehow make a back-up copy that isn't in  
23 exactly the same format, but in a neutral format  
24 that they can basically have as machines become not

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 available? Or do you know what libraries are doing  
2 with regard to that?

3 MR. MARKS: I don't know. And I haven't  
4 heard of any such request being made.

5 MS. PETERS: Well, they clearly have a  
6 right under Section 108, to the point where it's  
7 deteriorating, to make back-up copies. And the  
8 question is if you had an access control on it,  
9 wouldn't that then inhibit the ability that they  
10 have by law with regard to the copy?

11 MR. MARKS: It may, it may. And I think  
12 if that sort of problem develops, I think a much  
13 more sensible remedy to that problem is for the  
14 library and the content owner to work out some sort  
15 of guideline, whereby the content owner needs to  
16 make available a copy that's suitable for archiving  
17 to the library. I think an approach that is  
18 specifically tailored to this potential problem  
19 would be far better than enacting or adopting an  
20 exception to the prohibition on circumvention.

21 I understand that 1201(a)(1)(B) really  
22 only gives you rulemaking authority in this context,  
23 to adopt exceptions or exemptions for circumvention.  
24 But I know the Library of Congress has other  
25 rulemaking abilities in terms of preservation or

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)

1 archiving or library exceptions. And I think that  
2 would be proper place to address those concerns.

3 MS. PETERS: Okay. Well, it's now after  
4 six o'clock. I want to thank all the witnesses for  
5 -- I'm looking around before I do this. Is there  
6 anyone else who wants to ask a question on the  
7 panel? Is there anyone else out there who wants to  
8 say anything?

9 All right. It's after six, and that I  
10 really do appreciate all the effort that went into  
11 people to appear here today. And also your  
12 willingness to answer our questions so thoroughly.  
13 And I also want to thank people who attended.

14 There is one more opportunity to have  
15 input into the evidence that we're gathering. And  
16 that, of course, is the comments that can come in up  
17 to June the 23rd on what was raised in here. Thank  
18 you very much.

19 (Whereupon, at 6:05 p.m., the hearing  
20 was adjourned.)

21  
22  
23

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 [www.nealrgross.com](http://www.nealrgross.com)